Tho: Mor'
Sym 7.55.8

The Byrth of mankynd, otherwyse named the womans Boke.

Newly set forth, corrected and augmented, whose cōtentes ye may reade in thee Table of the Boke, and moste playnely in the Prologue.

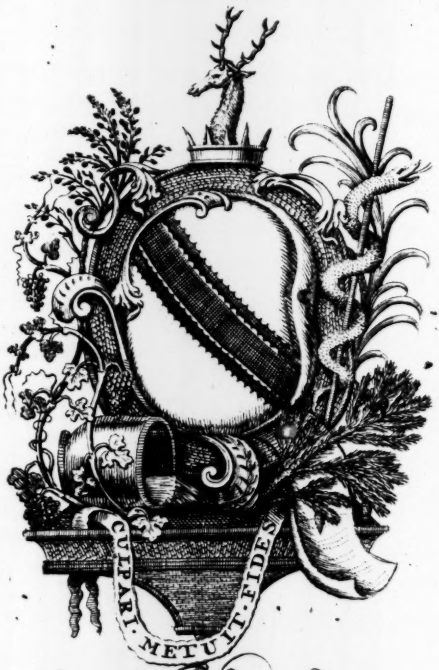
By Thomas Raynald Phisition.

Anno. M.D.Lii.

1830
1552
278

UNIVERSITY LIBRARY CAMBRIDGE

Quamuis possit Aristarchus quispiam curam nonnullam, diligentiamq; in hoc opere desiderare: nullus tamē tam iniquus erit, qui inficias iuerit opere precium hic aliquod factum esse: quum & multo locupletius, auctius, emendatiusq; quam vel Latine, vel Anglice, prius habebatur, iam prodeat. Et nisi plurimis, hiisq; necessariis curis familiaribus distracti (Interimdum excudebatur) fuissemus, alius plane, factus foret hic liber. Haud ignari, non pauca hic congeri parum admodum necessaria, que omitti potuissent absq; vllo lectoris dispendio. Rursum alia desi-
[illegible] esens
[illegible] sub
[illegible] bus
[illegible] t



John Whitfield Surgeon.

94 III 479

Here begynneth the Table of thys presente Boke.

Fyrste, a Prologue to the women readers.

¶ In this fyrste Chap. is briefly declared the contentes of the first boke. Capit. i.

¶ In how many Coates the body is lapped or inuolued. Capit. ii Foli. i

¶ Here is declared what the muskles be. Capit. iii folio. iiii

Of the kell called peritoneū. Ca. iiii. fo. vi

¶ The declaratiō of the names and nature of the Matrix. Capit. v fo. viii

Of the wōbe & hys partes. Ca. vi fol. ix

¶ Of the Mother porte. Cap. vii foli. xi

¶ Of the vessels of sede called ỹ stones with other therto appertayning. Ca. viii fo. xiii

¶ Of the sede bringers. Capit. ix eodem

¶ Of thee offyce and vse of these sede bryngers. Capit. x foli. xvii

¶ Of the waye by the which the sede is sent from the stones to the aungels or corners of the matrix. Cap. xi foli. xvii

Presented by Mrs Darwin
1894

¶ Here is declared the sytuation of the bladder in woman. Capit. xii. foli. xxv

¶ Of the vaynes which resort to the matrix and the partes thereof. Item of the termes and theyr course wyth the causes thereof. Capit. xiii. foli. xxviii

¶ Of the. iii. caules or wrappers wherein ỹ infant is lapped. Capit. xiiii. fol. xxxiiii

¶ Which of the thre matrix vaynes cõtayne the termes: & howe the milke cometh to the womans brestes. Capit. xv. foli. xli

¶ The declaration by letters of the fygures folowing, wherin be set forth to ỹ eye euery part in womã mẽcioned in this boke before.

¶ Of the fyrst fygure. foli. l.

¶ Of the second fygure. eodem

¶ Of the thyrd fygure. foli. li

¶ The fowrth fygure. fol. lii

¶ The fyfth fygure. fo. liiii

¶ The syxte fygure. eodem

¶ The seuenth fygure. fol. lv.

¶ Of the. viii. ix. x. and. xi. fygure. eodem.

¶ The Table of the second Boke.

Of the tyme of byrth, and which is called natural or vnnaturall. Cap. i. foli. lvi

Of easy and vneasy, difficul, or dolorous delyueraunce, and the causes of it: wyth the signes howe to knowe and forsee the same. Capit. ii. folio. lviii

Howe

How a womā with child ſhal vſe her ſelf, and what remedyes be for theym that haue hard laboure. Capit.iii. foli.lxiii.

Remedyes & medycynes by the whych the labor may be made more tollerable, eaſye, & without great payne. Capit.v fol.lxxvi

How the ſecondyne or ſeconde byrth ſhalbe forſed to yſſue forth, yf it come not freſye of hys owne kynde. Capit.v. fol.lxxix

How many thinges chaunce to the women after their labour, & how to auoyde, defend, or to remedy the ſame. Capi.vi. fo.lxxxiiii

Of abortcementes or vntymely byrthes, & the cauſes of it, & by what remedies it maye be defended, holpē & eaſed. Ca.vii. fo.xciiii

Of dead byrthes, & by what ſygnes or tokens it may be knowen, by what meanes it may alſo be expelled. Cap.ix. fol.C iii

In the laſt chap. of this boke, be briefly reeyted certayne experte medycynes whiche be moſt requiſite to ỹ chiefe purpoſe entended in this preſent boke. Cap.x. fol.C x

¶ The thyrde Boke.

IN this fyrſt chap. of this thirde Boke is fyrſt declared the matters therein cōtayned, & then how the infante newly borne, muſt be handled noryſhed, and loked to. Capit.i. folio.C xiii

Of the nourſe, & her mylke: and how long

the chyld ſhould ſucke. Cap. ii fol. C xb
Of dyuerſe dyſeaſes & infirmities whych chaunce to chyldren lately borne: & the remedies therfore. Capit. iii. fol. C xix
Of thee fyxe or ouermoche looſenes of the bellye. eodem
To vnloſe the chyld being bound. fo. C xx
Remedye for the cough and diſtillation or catarrhes of the head. fo. C xxi
Remedye for ſhorte wynde fo. C xxiii
Agaynſte wheales or bladders on the tongue. eodem
Of exulceration or clefture, chappinge or chyninge of the mouth. foli. C xxiiii
Of apoſtumation & runnynge of the eares Folio. eodem
Of apoſtumation in the head fol. C xxv.
Of the ſwellynge or bolnynge of the eyes. Folio. eodem
Of the ſcumme or whyte of the eye eodem
Agaynſt immoderate heate of the feuer. Folio. eodem
Agaynſt frettynge or knawyng in the bellye. foli. C xxvi
Agaynſt ſwellyng of the body eodem
Agaynſt often ſneeſynge eodem
Of whelkes in ỹ body & the cure. fo. C xxvii.
Agaynſt ſwelling of the coddes. eodem
Agaynſt ſwelling of the nauell. fo. C xxviii

Agaynſt

Agaynst vnslepynesse eodem
Agaynst yexinge of the hyckate eodem
Agaynst often parbrakinge by weakenesse & feblenesse of the stomacke fol.C xxix
Agaynst fearefull and terrible dreames. folio.C xxx.
Agaynst yssuynge forthe of the fundamente gutte. folio.C xxxi
Agaynst Tenasmus. eodem
Agaynst wormes in the belly. eodem
Of chaufing or gaulling in any place of the bodye. folio.C xxxiii
Of the fallyng syckenesse eodem
Consumption or pyning away of the bodye. Folio.C xxxiiii
Of lassytude, wearynes, or heauynes of the chyldes body. eodem
Of trembling of the body or of certayn membres of the body, called the palsye. fo.Cxxxv
Agaynst the strāgury or stone with stopping of the vryne. eodem.
Of gogle eyes or loking a squint. fo.c xxxvi

¶The fowrth Boke.

Of soche thynges the which shall be entreated of in this.iiii.boke.Ca.i. eodem
Of conception, & how many wayes it maye be hindred or letted.Capit.ii eodem
How many wayes conception may be letted and how the causes may be knowen. Capit.iii. Fol.C xxxix

How to know whether lacke of conceptiō be of the womā or of the man, & how it may be perceaued whether she be conceaued or no Capit. iiii. fo, c xli

Of certayne remedies & medicines which may farther ỹ womā to cōceiue, ca, v fo. 142

Of diuers bellyfyinge receptes. fol. c xlv

¶ Of the cauſes and remedies for dandzaffe of the head.

To take away hayre frō places where it is vnſemely. fol. cxlvi.

To do away frekens or other ſpottes in the face. fol. c xlvii

To deſtroy wartes & ſoch lyke excreſcenſis on the face or elſ where. eodem

To cleare and clatifie the ſkyn in the hādes face or other part of the body. fo. c xlviii

To ſouple & mollifye the ruggedneſſe of the ſkynne. eodem

Agaynſt ſoden riſinges of pimpels thzough vnkynd heat in the face or elſ wher. eodem

To kepe & pzeſerue the teeth cleane eodem

Of ſtynkynge bzeath fo. c xlix

Of the ranke ſauour of ỹ armeholes eodem

¶ Here endeth the Table of thys pzeſent volume.

¶ A Prologe to the women Readers.

HEre in thee beginninge of this presente Prologue, I wyl folowe the example of theym, whych when they byd any gestes to dyner or soupper, are wont fyrst to declare, what shall be theyr there: what fare, and howe many dyshes they shal haue: prayinge them to take it in good worth, and too looke for neyther better ne worse then hath ben mencioned of: And euen so here wyl I do. Before that ye entre into thee readinge of thys lytle treatyse, I shal succintly & in fewe wordes recyte the summe and chiefe Contentes of thee same, wyth the vtylitie and profyt which maye ensue, to the dylygent and attentife ouerreader therof; to thende that ye of these thinges beyng first

The entent of thauctor

wel aduertysed, may haue the more or lesse courage to employ youre labour in ouerloking & perusinge of ỹ same. For cõmunely it doeth occasionate any mã to be the more prompt ready, & willing to take payne, whẽ he is assured or certified of the profyt, purpose, & fruyt therof coming: and lykewyse it is a great pricke or allurement, entysinge & meuynge a man, to reade any boke, whẽ he is somewhat fyrst admonyshed of the matters comprehended and contayned therein.

The more part of this boke trãslated into english. iii. or iiii. yeares paste.

Wherfore now to come to our purpose, ye shal vnderstand that about a thre or foure yeres past, a certayne studious & diligent clarke, at the request & desyre of diuers honest & sad matrones, beynge of hys acquayntaũce, dyd translate out of Latin into Englysh a great part of thys boke, entitelyng it according to the La-

tyne

tine inscription (de partu hominis, that is to saye: of the byrth of mankynd) which we nowe do name (The womās boke) (for so moch as the moste parte or well neare all therin entreated of, doth concerne and touche onely women) In whych hys trāslatiō he varied, or declyned nothing at al from the steppes of his Latine auctor. Obseruynge more sydelytye in translatynge, then choyse or dyscretion at that tyme in admyttynge & alowynge many thynges in the same Boke, greately neadyng admonityon and wary aduyse or counsell to the readers, whyche otherwyse myghte sometymes vse that for a helpe, thee whyche shoulde turne to a hynderaunce. Wherefore I reuoluyng & earnestly reuysinge frō top to too ye sayd boke, & here withal cōsidering the manifold vtilite & profyte, whych therby moughte ensue

The name of thys Boke.

to all women (as touching that purpose) yf it were more narowly loked ouer, and wyth a strayghter iudgemēt more exactely euery thing therin ponderd & tryed, thoughte my labour & paynes shuld not be euyl employed, ne vnthankefully accepted & receaued of al honest, discrete & sage wemen. Yf I after good and dyligent perusing therof dyd correcte, & amende sothe fautes in it, as seemed worthy of the same, & to aduyse the readers what thynges were good or intollerable to be vsed, which were daūgerous, & which were vtterly to be eschued. The which thinge I haue not only so done, but ouer this haue ther vnto adioyned & annexed dyuers other more experimented & more familier medicines. And farther haue in the first boke set forth, & euidently declared, al the inwarde partes of womē (soch as were necessary

Many thinges aneped and newely added to thys boke.

The Cōtentes of the first boke

sary to be knowē to our purpose) & that not only in wordes, but also in lyuelye and expresse fygures, by the which euery part before in the boke described, may in maner be as exactly & clearely perceaued, as though he ye were present at the cuttyng open or anathomy of a dead womā. And thinke not the vtylitye & profyte of this fyrst boke, & knowledge therof to be lytle or of smal value, but take it as the foūdation & groūde, by the perceauerance wherof your wyttes and vnderstāding shal be illuminat and lyghtned, the better to vnderstand, how euery thing commeth to passe within your bodies in tyme of cōception, of baringe, and of byrth. And farther by ỹ perfeict knowledge of this boke ye shal clearely perceaue the reason of many diseases which happē peculiarly to womē, & the causes therof: by which perceauerance

How profytable the fyrst Boke is.

uerãce agayne ye ſhal haue the readier vnderſtãding how to wſtand & remedy the ſaid infirmities or diſeaſes. For note ye wel, ỹ as there is no mã what ſoeuer he be, ỹ ſhal become an abſolute & perfect phiſitiõ, onles he haue an abſolute & perfect knowledge, of al ỹ inwardes & outwardes of mãs & womãs body: euẽ ſo ſhal ye neuer groũdly vnderſtand the matters cõtayned in the .ii. boke, or any other cõmunicatiõ, or writinge, touchyng the ſame intent, except ye firſt haue true & iuſt cognoiſſãce in ỹ firſt boke. Agayn whẽ ỹ a womã cometh to a phiſitiõ for counſel, concerning ſomething that maye be amiſſe in ỹ part: the anſwere of the phiſition & reſonable allegatiõ of cauſes to the ſame infirmite is many tymes obſcure, darke & ſtraũge, to be comprehẽded by the womã, for lacke of due knowledge of the ſituatiõ, maner, & fa-

The vtilite of the perfect knowledge of Anotomye.

fashion

fashion of the inwardes: And truely whē a person is sycke or diseased in any part, it is halfe a cōforte, yea half his helth to vnderstād in what part the disease is, & how that part lyeth in the body: This knowledge also ministreth yet a farther ingyn & policie to inuēte infinitely ỹ better, how the medicine shuld be applyed, and after the moost profytable sorte ministred & set to the diseased plotte To be short, al the wyttines and artificiall, crafty inuention, & dyuerse maners of mynistrations in the noble science of physicke procedeth and springeth of the profound knowledge of anothomie. Therfore mine aduise and vtter cousel is, that all women in whose handes this lytle boke shal chaunce to come, with al dyligence do force them selues perfectlye to the vnderstandynge of thys fyrst boke: well assuryng them that they

The cousel of thauctor to the readers.

they shall not repente them of theyr small paynes bestowed in that behalfe: & to the ende that euery thing mought be the plainer & more easie to attaine vnto. I haue at ỹ latter ende of the forsaid first boke set the figures whych represent such matters as were entreated of in ỹ boke before: & also haue thereto annexed a sufficient declaratiõ, and exposition by letters of all partes & parcels contayned in the sayde fygures.

The Cõtentes of the second Boke

In the secõd boke we shal declare the diuers sortes and maners of the deliueraũce or byrth of mankynd: & all the daungers, pãrels, and other cases happenyng to the labouryng womã at that sealõ: with remedies and manifold medycines, cõcerning the same, wher also we haue not omitted ne lefte out any medicine beyng fyrste in the olde boke, but haue in many places rectified & amended

the

the same, according to reason, & the lawes of phisike: & besides this hane added therto dyuers other salutarie & effectuall medicines: both as other I my self, or other phisitiõs beyng yet a lyue at this daye, haue experimented and practysed. Farther more in this secõd boke ye may find dyuers remedies, wherby to prouoke the termes or flowres (when that nedeth) or to restrayne or stoppe the same, when they issue more largely then nature doth requyre, with manye other matters to lõge here to be rehearsed.

many true ly experimented medicines added to thys Boke.

¶ In the thyrde Boke shall be entreated of the electiõ and choyse, by certayne sygnes & tokens of a good nourice, which maye foster & bringe vp the chylde beyng borne. Itẽ medycynes encreasyng, deminishinge, attenuatyng, engrossynge, & amending the milke in ỹ nourices brestes

Thinges entreated of in the thyrd Boke.

Also remedies for manye & sundrye diseases, which ofte tymes chaunce vnto infantes after theyr byrth.

What is cõtayned in the fowrthe Boke.

¶ In the fowrth & last boke, we will somwhat comune of cõceptiõ, wyth the causes hyndering or farthering the same: shewing certayne counsel and remedies wherby & by the grace of God, the vnfruytefull maye be made more fruytful, & impedimẽtes of conception, by vertue of medycynes removed & ouercome, the womã beynge made the more apte to conceaue. And farther in this last boke shall be vttered & set forth certayne embellesshing receptes, concerninge onely honest & helthsome decoratiõ and clenelynes, alwaies most lowable & commendable in a woman: as to skoure & clense the head, to cause the haire to kepe his natural coulor to preserue the hayre from fallynge awaye: to take away hayre frõ certayne

tayne places, where beynge, it cau-
seth some deformite or vnsemelines
in a person: to subtyle and clere thee
skyn in the face or other wher: to re-
moue & do awaye spottes, frekins, &
other soch like displeasant markes
and tokens: to souple & mollifye the
skyn beynge rugged & rough, wyth
other mo soch like matters to longe
here to be rehearsed: the which true
ly are not of any prudente person to
be reiected, improued or dispraysed.
For as moch as I teache nothinge
in that place, but that onely whych
may make to the honeste, comely, &
cõmendable conseruing & mayntey-
ning of the inset & naturall beautye
in a woman vtterly abhorring and
defyinge al fardyng, paynting, and
counterfeyt caste coulors: whyche of
some Dampnable and mysproude
people be dayely vsed, soch as by all
meanes possyble, seeke and searche

Agaynst paynt-ynge of womens faces.

more the abhominable, & dyuylyshe paynting & garishe setting forth of theyr mortal carcases (ẏ better therby to cõmende it vnto the eyes of folishe & fonde men) thẽ by honest, sobre, debonayre, & gentyll maners, so to demene theyr lyfe, that they may thereby rather obtayne the loue, amitie, and harty perpetual fauoure fyrst of god, & then of all honest discrete, & godly wyse men. Thus now to be shorte, I haue in as compẽdyouse maner as the matter wold suffre, set before youre eyes the chiefe & principall contentes cõprehended in this lytle volume. And now remayneth there nothing els, but onely to requyre the beneuolent fauoure and good acceptation of this my labour and paynes spent in the cõpyling of these foresayde matters: Prayinge that as it hath ben, to me paynefull in the composing thereof: so it may be

The beneuolencye of the reader requyred.

be, both pleasaunt & fruyteful to all women (for whose sake and only respecte it is set forth) in the readyng therof. How beit, I am not ignorãt ne vnsure that manye there are, before whose syghte thys Boke shall fynd small grace and lesse fauoure. So harde a thynge it is to wryte or endyte anye matter what so euer it be, that should be able to sustayne, & abyde the variable iudgement, and to obtayne or wyn the constant loue and allowaunce of euery man: especially yf it contayne in it any nouelltie, or vnwonte straungenesse: therfore the auncyente Poetes in tymes passed, when that they enterprysed any newe or straunge warkes, were wont in the frunte of the same, with great protestation, to inuocate & cal vpon all the goddes and goddesses by name, requyryng them fauourablye to aspyre, ayde, & prosper theyr

harde to please many Iudgementes.

The maner of Poetes in tymes past.

tempted purpose: to thende, that by theyr obtayned fauoure it moughte be thee more acceptable & graciouse to all soch as shoulde it beholde and reade.

whose example ryghte necessary and neadefull it were that I here shoulde full deuoutely ensue and folowe, so that I coulde fyrste beleue, that by soche maner of inuocation, moughte be allured and wonne the beneuolencye and wyllyng fauoure of all soche, in whose handes thys present Boke shulde happen to fall. But trewely I do suppose that all though I should call downe all the nyne noble Muses oute of thee famouse mounte of Helycon: or praye to be assistent the thre louinge graces, or great Apollo, God, Mayster, and chiefe inuentour of thee nature of all herbes and other medycynes: or Esculapius chiefe patrone & president

The difficultie to cōcyle ẏ good wyll of peruert people

lydent in the worthy science of Phy
sicke: or wyttye Mercury wyth hys
doulce & lugred eloquencye: & swete
Suada, goddesse of all perswasion
with al other the goddes & goddes-
ses what euer they be, in whō inge-
nious Poetes do fayne to be a maie-
stie, myghte & power, to enclyne the
hartes of men for to delyte and take
pleasure in any soch thinge, whych
fyrst shalbe by their godhed alowed
and fauoured. Though (I saye) all
these shuld fyrmelye conspyre in one
together and bende them vtterly to
the moste of theyr hygh puissaunce,
to sacre, halow, yea, and wyth their
holye poeticall spirite to breathe o-
uer thys Boke, yet shoulde there be
foūd people of sq ingrate, straunge,
peruers & waywarde wyttes, that
woulde (wythoute all good reason)
blame & improue thee saue vnethe
yet seene and muche lesse redde. For

The lyghte iudgemētes of manye men.

who be they that geue so precipitat and heady iudgemētes, in al maner of matters as sothe (for thee more parte) the which therein shall haue least cognoyssance or knowledge, & take least payne in reading or searching, the verite of that thinge, agayn the whych they be most stout, doubtie, and bolde pronoūcers. And this do I not saye onely of thē that peraduenture shall here & there in the proces of this Boke fynde anye particular matters to reproue and carpe, sometymes worthely, & some tymes otherwyse. But also, yea, & that moch more of thē whych generallye, wythoute all exceptyon shall condempne and vtterlye reproue all the whole matter: some alledgynge that it is shame, and other somme that it is not mete, ne syttynge soch matters to be entreated of, so playnly in oure mother and vulgare lan-

Of thē that vtterlye do condempne this Boke.

guage

guage: to thee dishonoure (as they saye) of womanhed, and the derisiō of theyr wont secretes, by the detection and discoueringe wherof, men it readynge or hearinge shal be moued therby the more to abhorre and loothe the company of womē. And farther, in theyr communications to ieste, and bourde of wemens pryuytyes not wonte to be knowen of them: wyth dyuers other soch lyke cauyllations and reasones: so that theyr oppynyon it is, that it were more expediente and better, to suppresse & vtterly to condempne vnto darkenesse forеuer thys Boke, thē to sende it forth into lyghte. Loo soch is the light iudgemēte of them the whych in euery thynge wherof maye ensewe bothe good and euyll, haue alwayes theyr eyes waityng, and firmely affixed & directed vpon the euyll, pykynge and cholyng out

Answere to certayne cauillations.

the

the wourke of euerye matter, omyttynge and leauyng to speake of the beſt, as thynge whych were nothynge to theyr pourpoſe. Yf euery thynge in thys worlde ſhoulde bee wayed & palled vpō after thys ſort, then ſhuld we be fayne to cōdempne and banyſhe thoſe thinges farre frō vs, which are at this tyme accompted & taken for the moſte neceſſarye, worthy & of greateſt pryce or eſtimation: For to be ſhort, ther is nothyng vnder heauen ſo good, but that it may be peruerted & turned to an euil vſe by them that be euyl & noughte them ſelues, & do abuſe it, ne is ther any thyng ſo abſolute & perfect, but by thoccaſion of thabuſe thereof, at one tyme or other maye and doethe enſue greate daunger and damage to mankynde. Fyre & water be two rygyte neceſſarye elementes to the vſe of man, wythout the whych we could

Nothinge ſo good but it maye be abuſed.

Fyre & water abuſed.

could not lyue: yet by the meanes of them, many a myserable dede hath bene done and perpetrated. By fyre hath ben cõsumed, & deuoured hole cyties & countries. By water swalowed & drowned infinite mẽ, shippes, yea, and hole regions. Agayn meat and drincke to the moderate vsars therof, doeth ministre & mayntayne lyfe. And contrarye to the vnmeasurable and vnsatiate gourmantes and glottons it hath ful many thousande tymes, brought surfeyt, sycknesse, and at the last death. By weapons, Realmes and Cities be defended from the iniurye and violencye of theyr fierce ennemyes, thee trewe wayfaringe man from the assaulte of the theefe: yea, and manye tymes cleane contrarye, by weapons realmes and Cytyes be subuerted and vtterlye destroyed: the true mans throote by the theefe cut. The moste

Meate and drincke abused.

Weapons abused.

holye

The Byble abused.

holy and sacred Byble, teacheth no thinge but holynesse and vertuous lyuynge, charitie to god and to our neyghbour, reformatiō of oure wicked lyuing, & briefly the hye way to god. The blessed sacramēt of thaulter was institute & ordeyned by oure sauiour Christ for a principall, earnest, lyuely and most present consolation and comfort of mās conscience: yet both holy scripture and also the forsayd holy sacrament haue ben, be, and wyll be, the confusion & condempnation of a greate numbre of the abusers, and indigne or vnworthy receauers of them both. Shuld menne for thee auoydynge all these forsayde inconuenyentes, and for the reasons abouesayd, condempne and bannysshe fyre and water: forsake theyr meate and drincke: suppresse and forbyd all maner of weapons: abolysshe and sette aside thee

The blessed sacramente maye be abused.

holy

holye scripture: denye or vnregarde the blessed sacramēt: no it were but madnesse ones to thincke it. Therefore I say the iudgemēt of that eye can neuer be egall & indifferēt, whiche hath more respect & regarde alwayes to the displeasures & hurtes possible to happen (onely thorough the misuse of a thing) then to the emolumentes & profytes dayely & cōmunelye lyke to ensue to the well vsars of the same. That, that of it selfe is good, is neuer to be disalowed for thee sake of thē that do abuse it. For as the apostle also doth testifye, to them that be good theim selfe, euery thing turneth to good: what euer it be is to them a sufficient matter and occasion therein to seke the glory of God, & the onely profyte of theyr euen christen. And contrarye soch as be of an yll disposition, in euery thing (be it neuer so good & salutary

Whose iudgementes can neuer be indifferent.

To ꝑ good euery thinge turneth to good.

The condition of soch as be yll.

lutary) pekyth out matter of mayn-
tenaunce to their lewdenes, turninge
matters of sadnes & discretion to fo
lyshe & peuyshe prattinge contention
wherfore consydering that ther is
nothyng in this worlde so necessary,
ne so good, holye, or vertuouse, but
that it may by wyckednesse be abu-
sed, it shalbe no great wonder thou-
ghe thys lyttle Booke also, made,
wrytten, and setforth for a good pur
pose, yet by light and lewde persons
be vsed contrary to godlynesse, ho-
nesty, or thentent of the wryter ther-
of. The abusion of thys boke (in my
symple iudgement) consisteth onely
in these two poynts. The one is, least
that some wyckedlye dysposed per-
son should abuse soch medicynes as
be here declared for a good pour-
pose, to some dyuelysshe and lewde
vse. What I meane by thee lewde
vse of theym, they that haue vnder
standinge

Wherein this Booke may be abu sed.

standing, righte sone wyl perceaue. The second poynt is, least that this Boke happeninge into any lyghte marchauntes hādes, shuld minister matters vnto soch, to deuyse of these thinges at vnset & vnsemelye tymes: to the derision or ashaming of soch womē as should be in presence. &c. To this reasons can I make no better answere, then hath ben alled ged before. Not wythstandyng, yet I saye that I trust, yea, and do not doubt, but that thys Boke shall be so discreately deuyded abroade, that none of them shall fall in any soche persons handlinge. Agayne yf any do chaunce to thē, I am sure, they wyll as soone reade thys prologue, as the rest of thys boke, the whych thing when they shal do: here shall they heare of me, ẏ they be in theyr doynges, neyther honeste, good, ne godlye: but speakynge vnreuerentlye,

The second poynte.

No lyghte persons shall haue any of these bokes.

ly, contemptuouslye & vntymelye of soch thinges, they do great iniury, dishonor, & contumely to nature, yea to the hygh god of nature: For he ẽ declareth any thinge in man or woman, pryue or apart talking & reher syng it in reproche, derision, or confusion of his euen christẽ, can not be excused, of mortall & deadlye syn: for so moch as contumeliously he ashameth & confoũdeth hys euen christẽ wherwyth he bringeth hym oute of pacience, meuyng him to yre, & vengeaunce, in rehersyng of soch thynges and after soch sorte, as he knoweth shoulde agreue and vexe his mynde: wherfore for soche dedes he shal not be accounted of the numbre of honeste & sage persons, but of the lyght & lewde. Yet another sorte is there, whych wold that neyther honeste ne vnhonest mẽ should se thys boke: for because (as they saye) be a man

Of folyshe and lewde talckers

Som wold that nether honeste ne vnhonest should haue thys boke,

man neuer so honest, yet by reading here, of thinges to theim before vnknowen they shal cõceaue a certayn lothsomnes & abhorring towardes a woman. To these I answere that I know nothing in womã so priuie ne so secret that they should nede to care who knew of it: nether is there any parte in woman more to be abhorred, then in man: And yf the knowledge of soche thynges whyche cõmunely be called the wemens priuyties, shulde diminishe the hartye loue and estimation of a woman in the mynde of man, then by thys reason, Phisitians & chyrurgians wyues shoulde greatly be abhorred and misbeloued of theyr husbandes And I my selfe lyke wyse, whyche wryteth thys Boke, should meruetlously aboue manye other abhorre or lothe wemẽ: but to be short, there is no soch thyng, neyther any cause

No matter who reade thys boke,

therto why. Wherfore all soch ten-
der reasons set aparte, let no woman be
greued, who shal see or behold thys
boke: for yf the partye be lewde, vn-
happy & knauish that shal reade it:
here I am sure he shal lerne nether
lewdenesse, vnhappinesse, ne knaue-
ry. How be it generally to al men, in
whose handes this boke shal chan-
ce to come: I counceyll and exhorte,

Therhorta cyon to al readers:

that they take not vppon theym to
talcke of anye thynges therein con-
tayned, but onely where it may edy-
fye, and be assuredlye well accepted.
For women lyghtely wyll not glad-
ly heare of soch matters, by any mã
vnlesse it be a physition of whome
they requyre councell, or of theyr
discrete husbandes, it shall be noo
displeasure to anye honeste and lo-
uynge woman, that her husbande
shuld reade soch thynges: for many
men there be of so gentyll & louyng

nature

nature towardes theyr wyues, that they wyll be more dylygent and careful to reade or seke out any thyng that shuld do theyr wyues good beynge in that case, then thee wemen them selues. Briefly I requyre all readers hereof to interpretate & construe euery thing herein contayned accordinge to the best: and to vse euery thinge therein entreated of, to the purpose wherfore it was wyttē for trewely as for my parte considerynge the manyfolde, dayly and imminente daungeours and parelles, the whyche all maner of women of what estate, or degree so euer they be, in theyr labours do sustayne and abyde, yea, many tymes wyth parel of theyr lyfe (of the whych there be to manye examples neadelesse here to be rehearsed) I thought it shuld be a verye charitable and laudable dede: & ryght thanckefully to be ac-

The consyderatiō why this Booke was sette forth.

cepted of all honourable and other honeste matrones, yf by my paynes thys lyttle treatyse were made too speake Englysshe, as it hathe bene longe syth taught to speake dutche frenche, spanysshe, and diuers other languages. In the which coũtreys there be fewe wemẽ that can reade, but they wyll haue one of these Bokes alwayes in readynesse: where also this and other soche Bokes be as communely solde at euery stationars shop, as any other Boke. The same commodytie then and profyte whych they in theyr regions do obtayne by enioyinge of thys lyttle Boke in theyr maternal language, maye also enlewe vnto all women in thys noble Realme of Englande it beynge lykewyse sette fourth in oure Englysshe speache: so that too theym whych dylygentlye wyll aduert, & geue hede to the instructions

This boke set forth in many other languages.

of

of thys lyttle boke, it maye supplye the rowme and place of a good mydwyfe: & adwyse theym many tymes of sundrye cases, chaunces, and remedyes, wherin peraduẽture ryght wyse wemen and good mydwyues shalbe full ignorant. And truely (as I haue bene credybly enformed by dyuers persones worthye to be beleued) there be syth the fyrste settinge forth of thys Boke, right many honourable Ladyes, and other worshypfull gentyll wemen, whych haue not dysdayned the oftener by the occasyon of thys Boke, to frequent and haunt wemẽ in theyr laboures, caryenge wyth them thys Boke in theyr handes, and causynge sothe part of it as doeth chiefly concerne thee same pourpose, to be red before the mydwyfe, and thee reste of thee wemen then beynge presente: wherby ofte tymes, then all haue ben put

How Ladies & gentyl wemē haue vsed thys boke.

in remēbraunce of that, wherewyth the labouring womā hath ben greately conforted, and alleuyated of her thronges & traueyl: whose laudable example, & doynges, wold god that many proud mydwyues wold ensue and folowe: amonge the whyche as there be many right expert, diligēt, wyse, circumspect, and tender about soche busynesse as appertayneth to their office: So be ther agayne many mo ful vndiscrete, vnreasonable, chorlishe, & farre to seke in soch thinges, the whych should chiefly helpe and succour the wemē in theyr most paynefull laboure and thronges.

Of mydwyues.

Through whose rudenesse & rashenesse onely I doubte not but that a greatnumbre of women in theyr labour spede worse then neded otherwise. But here now let not the good mydwyues be offended wyth that, ẏ is spokē of the bad. For verely ther

is no ſcience, but that it hath his Apes, Owles, Beeres, & Aſſes: which as aboue al other haue moſt nede of information & teaching: ſo moſt cõmunely agaynſt, more thẽ any other wyll they kycke and winſe agaynſt ſoch as would thẽ reforme or reduce to anye better waye then they haue ben accuſtomed vnto in tymes paſt: And this do I ſay, for becauſe that at the fyrſt cõmyng abroade, of this preſent boke, manye of thys ſorte of mydwyues, meued eyther of enuye, or els of malyce, or both, dyligented and endeuored them very earneſtly, by all wayes poſſyble to fynde thee meanes to ſuppreſſe, and abrogate thee ſame: makynge all wemen of their acquaintaũce (whõ they thoughte to haue any knowledge thereof) to beleue, that it was nothynge worth: & that it ſhuld be a ſlaũder to wemen, for ſo moch as therein was

In euery ſcience ther be of all ſortes.

Some mydwiues wolde haue had thys boke forbyden.

The falſe ſurmiſes of the maleuolent.

descryed and sette forth the secretes and priuities of women: and that euerye boye and knaue had of these Bokes, reading them as openly as the tales of Robin hood. &c, the whi the layiges as they were very false and vntrue: & malicious allegatiõs only of cuyl harted persons, to whõ it was great griefe that any by the redyng therof, shuld se or vnderstãd more, then they had knowledge of before. So is it very south and true & ryght dyuers of the better & more sobre sorte, were thereof ful fayne, & glad: & very desirous to haue of thẽ And gaue faythful counsel also vnto wemen of theyr familier knoweledge, to heare the boke red by some other, or els (soch as could) to reade it thẽ selfes: whose honeste & vertuous industrye, in that behalfe, as it doth merite & deserue, the laude and prayse of al thẽ that be laudable thẽ

Yde good mydwyues were glad of this boke

selfe

selfe: euen so is the fylthy & vyle ingratitude & despituous enuy of thee malenolent, to be detested & vtterlye abhorred of al people: whose malignant wittes yf they might preuayle of their purpose, wold slete the good courages of al honest enterpryses, in those matters and all other. And thus I conclude and make an ende of this rude prologe, requyring the gentyl readers therof, that yf they shall fynde any thing therein interpretable to dyuers senses, to accepte onelye that whych may make to the beste: accordinge to my meanynge.

Enuy & vnthankefulnes to be abhorred.

¶ In thys fyrst Chapter is briefly declared the Contentes of the fyrst Boke.

ALthough that many thinges entreated of in thys fyrst Boke, shal seme vnto some not very necessary to the vnderstandynge of the seconde boke: yet thē contrarye do I ensure and certyfye (as I haue sufficiently sayd in the prologue) that the ignoraunt in the fyrst, shalbe full blynde in the seconde: to the which the first is as a keye, openynge and clearing the matters to be intreated of in the seconde.

The vtilite of the fyrst Boke.

¶ In thys fyrst Boke then shall be declared the forme, maner, and situation of the inward partes of a woman: soch as are in them, by nature dedycate and assigned to the propagation, conception, and bearinge of mankynde. In whome trewelye

The contentes of thys boke.

is

is thee receptacle and as ye woulde laye the campe or fyeld of mankynd to be engendred therein. And all though that man, be as principall mouer and cause of the generation: yet (no displeasure to men) thee woman doeth conferre and contribute moche more, what to the encreasement of thee chylde in her wombe, & what to the nourishmēt thereof, after the birth, then doth the mā. And doutlesse yf a man would demaunde to whom the chyld oweth most hys generation: ye may worthely make aunswere that, to the mother: whether ye regarde thee paynes in bearinge, other elles the conferrence of most matter in begettynge.

The woma conferreth more to thee generation then man

¶ Farther more in thys Boke ye shall reade certayne thynges whythe in tymes passed haue bene corruptlye, neglygently, yea, and very falsely wrytten of: and of the which

Many thin ges falsely wrytten of in tymes paae.

both

both men, yea, & womē them selues, haue conceaued verye erronious & misopinions, as ye shal farther perceaue in the processe.

¶ Now before that we come to the declaration of the organs generatyue in woman, it shall be necessary to the better vnderstāding therof, first to shewe the discription of certayne thynges, wythout whose knowledge, thys treatyse wolde be many tymes the more obscure, and darke.

¶ In howe many Coates the body is lapped or inuolued. ¶ Capit. ii.

The principall coates of the body

THe bodye of man or womā is inuolued or compassed vniuersallye wythe three principall coates. Of the which the first and vtternost is called the skyn: in latin Cutis: with whō generallye euery part of the body is cladde

cladde, & incloſed: the whych yet in ſome part is more ſoft, dylicate, and thynne, thē in ſome other: & in ſome one perſon more ſtowre & ſtyffe then in ſome other agayne: for cauſes nedeleſſe here to be reherſed.

¶ And ye ſhal note, that vpon the outwarde face & ſuperfycye of thys ſkyn, there is yet another thynner ſkyn: In latyn communely named Cuticula: and of ſome, Efloreſcencia cutis. The ſuperfi ciall ſkynne

This thinne ſkynne is it the which ye ſee ryſe lyke a bladder, when any parte of the body is blyſtered wyth fyre or hoate water: ſo that betwene thys thynne ſkynne and the verye ſkyn, is contayned the water, whyche reſorteth to the place by the violence of the fyre, or heate: the whych thynne ſkyn alſo we vſe too pyrcke, to lette thee water yſſue forthe: alſo the ſame that ſkaleth or pylleth of, on the handes or other parts of the

bodye

body being ſcabbed, & beginning to drye. Itē the ſkyn that the adders do caſt in the ſomer tyme is the foꝛe ſayd thyn ſuperficiall ſkyn and not the very ſubſtaūcial ſkyn of the body in dede. For the very ſkyn neuer pylleth ne falleth of, but by greate violēce, as by fleyng lyke as beaſtes be fleyne at thee botchers, & as they fley connies. And agayn the thinne oꝛ ſuperficiall ſkyn ſkale it, oꝛ fal it of, neuer ſo often, yet in the place of it, is reingendꝛed newe, as good alwayes as the fomer: But yf the ſeconde and very ſkyn be perysshed by cuttyng oꝛ apoſtumatiō, oꝛ by other caſualtie, it wyll neuer be reſtoꝛed to hys olde perfectyon agayne: but ſhall ſhewe alwayes in thee place wher it is, as it were a ſeame, ſkar, oꝛ a marke, ſmoth and harder then the other ſkyn, & wythout naturall powers.

The very ſkyn ſkaled not of.

The verye ſkyn perysshed, neuer reſtoꝛed

The

¶ The seconde inuesture or clothynge of the bodye, is named thee fleshye skynne: In latyn, Membrana carnosa: so called, for because that it contayneth, and is compassed of fleshynesse, then anye other kell or skynne in all thee bodye: and is as it were thee lynynge too thee foresayde Cutis, that is thee very skynne immedyate aboue hym: thee verye skyn and it beynge both baested togeather, by a great numbre of smal fybres or cordes entrelasynge these two skyns, so that with great payn vnneth maye they be seperated the one from the other. And farther, betwene these .ii. skyns, runne a great nũbre of baynes, artyres & synues, in euery part of the bodi: so that the great vaines, which apere so many festly to your sight in the armes, tẽples, hãdes, legges, fete & other places, run betwene ỳ proper skin, & the

The seconde Coate.

The fleshye skyn.

fleshely skin, this beyng to them as a bed, and that as a couerlet.

The thyrde coate is the fatte.

¶ The thyrd Coate of the body is the fat: in Latyn Adeps, thee whyche doeth not so generally in euery part of the body inuolue and wappe the same, as thee other two coates: but yet the man or woman, beynge in any reasonable lykyng, it is found in euery parte (except fewe) as the fore head, the temples, the backes of the handes and feete, wyth certayne other places nedelesse here to be recyted: & doeth entercurre or runne betwene the two foresayd skinnes, receauyng & embrasyng in it selfe the smal basting fybres, the baynes, artyres, and synues, which (as I said before) be deriued from the one skin to the other, and the greater foyson of fat that there is betwene the two skynnes, the lesse be the baynes intercurring betwene them, conspicuouse

Store of fat letteth the shew of the baynes,

ous or sensible to the eye (thabundãce of fat drowninge & coueringe the greatnes of them) the which also in the same self place of a lener or sparer person shalbe sene very great, & as it were swollen vaynes, in cõparison of the fatter. Itẽ vnderstande ye that in some part of the body naturally fatnesse doth abound moche more thẽ in other some: as in the belly lightely the fatté is two fyngers thicke & more: & in women that be meanely fat, in the thyes, & buttockes: this fat is of .iii. yea .iiii. figers thickenes: which (as is said aboue) alwayes hath his place betwen the forsayd two skynnes.

Fat in som parte more then some

¶ Nowe immedyatlye vnder the fleshely skyn be contayned the muskles of thee bodye: so that the inner face or superficy of the fleshely skyn where wyth it toucheth thee Muskles, is alwayes bedewyd wythe a

what is contayned next vnder the fleshy skyn.

certayne slymy moysture: by whych meanes the foresayde muskles mouyng & styrring vnder the sayd flesshye skyn be the frear and haue the lesse impedimēt or let in their motiō and very easy it is to seperate thys skyn from the Muskles.

¶ Here is declared what the muskles be.
¶ Capi. iii.

What is meaned by the name of Muskles.

Thee Muskles of mans body, be called the mouynge cordes, and fleshy stringes whereby any mēbre of the body is moued to or fro, vpward or downe warde, or turned rounde: as for example: yf ye close, or otherwise do moue eyther of your handes, and in closyng or mouyng it, with the other hand do feele the wreste of that hande, ye shal sensybly perceaue, as it were certayne cordes mouing vnder

der the skynne: the whych be called muskles, in latyn Musculi. To discusse curiously thee nature, or occasion of the name of muskles, is not for this place: here it is sufficiente to vnderstande what is meant by the name: yet note ye well that where so euer there is greate store of muskles and chiefly in the myddle parte of them, there is also great plenty of fleshy enterlarding & enterminglinge it selfe wyth the muskles, & as it were conbynding, colligating or knitting to geather the muskles: not so yet, but that neuertheless they haue theyr free motion.

The Muskles entermyngled wt flesshe.

¶ All other Muskles of the body left apart and vnmencioned of: here will I onely declare a lyttle of thee muskles of the bely, for so moch as their operation is sometymes conferente and appertayninge to the matters that we entende of.

The muſkles of thee belly.

¶Ouer the amplitude of the belly nexte vnder the fleſhye kell or ſkyn, be fowre muſkles, eche ſytuate and ſet vnder other: of the which the vppermoſt, immediatly touchinge the fleshy ſkyn, be called the Byalwyſe deſcendinge muſkles: in latyn, Muſculi obliqui deſcēdentes, of theſe muſkles there be two: in eche ſyde of the belly one: ſo that theſe .ii. byalwiſe deſcendyng muſkles, mete together in the myddel region of the belly, & be extended or ſpred ouer al the amplytude of the belly, ſhaping thereto as it were another coate.

¶The ſecond Muſkles be named the byalwyſe aſcendynge muſkles: in Latyn, Muſculi obliqui aſcendentes, whoſe beynge, is immediatly nexte vnder the inner face of the fyrſt muſkles. Of theſe alſo as of the fyrſt in eche ſyde or coaſt of the belly is ther one.

¶The

¶ The thyrd ſorte of the belly muſkles as they be ſytuate in ordre thee one vnder thee other, be called thee ryght muſkles in latyn, Muſculi recti, whyth be double as the other twoo before. The ryght muſkles.

¶ The fowrth be nompnated the ouerthwart muſkles, in latyn Muſculi tranſuerſi, Becauſe they tranſuerſe or ouerthwart the belly: in eche ſyde lyke wyſe of whom, there is one of thys muſkles: which in the myddle lyne of the belly encõtre eche other, as I haue ſaid of the aboue nained thre muſkles, ſo that the byal wyſe deſcendynge, and the byal wyſe, aſcendynge wythe thee ouerthwarte muſkles, do eche of them couer and compaſſe al the whole bredth of the bellye: but ſo do not the ryghte muſkles: for the bredth of theym is but ſmall in comparyſon of the other. All theſe fowre muſkles be to thee The ouerthwart muſkles.

The vse of the .iiii. belly muskles

entrayles & bowels wythin the belly, as .iiii. seueral coates, by the vertue & helpe of whom, together with the ayde of the mydriffe, al expulsiõ both vpward & downe warde in the guttes, in the stomacke, in the Matrix of the woman in the tyme of labour & also in the bladder in time of making of water, is wought: & yet besides this vtilite, they cloth (as I haue sayd) defend, fortifye & strẽgth the inwardes of the belly.

¶ Of the kell, called Peritoneum. ¶ Capit. iiii.

VNder thee laste muskle of the bellye, called the ouerthwart muskle, immediatly succedeth a certayn thin ryme, kell, or skyn, named in Latyn Peritoneum, whych compasseth round thee amplytude and largeur of thee belly: takynge hys oryginall at the bynders

Of Peritoneum and hys office.

bynders of the loyne bones, & from thence dylatynge and spreadynge it selfe abroade, vnderlyneth the ouerthwarte muscles, the mydryffe and parte of the shorte rybbes, to be shorte, thys ryne vnderlyneth all the whole cauyte, holonesse, or amplytude of the bellye, from the mydryffe to the flankes or share, immedyatlye contaynyng and inuoluing in it selfe all the whole contentes of the bellye, euen as the skyn next vnder the shel of an eg, enuyronneth, & cõpasseth immedyatlye all thee contayned meate of the egge. And as for Peritoneum, doeth not onely involue all the entrayles of the bellye in his compasse, but also yeldeth vnto eche entrayle a Coate and webbe of the clothe of hys owne bodye: by the whyche hys lyuery, they be the more arctely and straytly affixed or fastened vnto hym selfe, and farther

The vse & profyte of the peritoneum.

ther in thē selues the stronger, with in the cauitie of the belly, and vnder thys Peritoneum be cōtayned these bowels folowynge.

Bowels cō tayned vnder the peri toneum.

Fyrst the stomacke: whych is the fyrste receptacle and receauer of the foode or meate chawed and mashed before in the mouth, frō thense descendinge ouer the wynd pype, downe alonge the stomacke gut, & so consequently in to the stomacke: then the kell, in laty n Omentum: the lyuer, the splene, or melte, the bladder, and the matrix, then yet thee guttes, vnder the guttes the kidneys: the mayster vayne, and the mayster artyre. But here we shal begyn fyrst to entreate of the matrix as the parte whyche maketh chiefely to oure purpose.

¶ The declaration of the names and nature of the Matrix. ¶ Capit. v.

Here

HEre ye shall vnderstande, that these thre wordes, the matrix, thee mother, and the wombe do signifye but one thyng, that is to saye: the place wherin the sede of man is cõceaued, fetifyed, conserued, nourished & augmented: vnto the tyme of deliuerãce in Latin named Vterus & Matrix. The necke of this wombe, otherwyse called the womans pryuitie, we wyl call thee wombe passage, or thee pryuye passage: in latin Cervix vteri, & pudendi muliebre: the extreme ende, or the fyrst entraunce of this pryuitie or wombe passage, ye shal name thee passage porte: for because that it is the porte gate, or entraũce of that passage, or waye into thee wombe or matrix: in latin Vulua, i. valua.

Diuers names of the matrix.

¶ The wombe passage then or the necke of the wombe, taketh hys begynninge at the passage porte: and from

The necke of the matrix.

frō thence styeth & mounteth righte vpward vnder the sharebone lyke a great conduyct baryinge in length and bredth accordinge to the age of the woman.

¶ To make especyall mention of thee length of thys wombe passage were but folye, for thee dyuersytyes therof. Not wythstanding in wemē it is esteined of the length of .x. xi. xii. or .xiii. fingers bredthe, some more some lesse. And thys we maye saye that nature hathe so prouyded that it is of sufficiente length to receaue the priuite part of man in the time of generation dyrectinge the same towardes the wombe porte, thorough the which the sede is naturally sent from the mā into the wombe or mother, therto helpinge an attractyfe power, which is inset and geuen to the wombe to attracte and drawe towardes it selfe the sede parted from

the

the mā (so that ther be no other let.)

¶ Of the wombe and hys partes. ¶ Capi. vi.

AT the head or vpper ende of thys wombe passage is sytuate the wombe it selfe, whyche in wemen beynge not with chyld is but very lytle, contract & drawen together: so that the amplitude or largenesse therof, passeth not the amplitude & largenesse of the prime passage: ẏ which thing to some may seme vncredible: yet by annathomy ye may see it to be true: And for al this cōtraction or drawynge so nere together of the matrix thee outsyde of it is verye smothe, moyst, glisteringe, and reddyshe, as it were a lyttle readde tempered with a great deale of whyte: the insyde also of the Matrix is smothe: yea, and thoughe that thee Matrix

The womb or matrix in wemen not wyth chylde contrahyd.

as we haue sayde be full of ryuelles or wrinkles by the reason that it is so contract from a great amplytude or largenes (as maye be sene in the wombe or matrix of women wythe chyld) to thys lytle cõpasse, yet may a body scarce perceaue in this inner syde any wrinkle (al be it that there be infinite) they be so finely & neare drawen together.

The cause of the contraction of the matrix.

¶ This contraction of the Matrix no doubte was made by nature, for this causes: partely that at soch tyme, that thee woman is not wythe child it shuld occupy the lesse roume in the belly, but chiefly that in tyme of conception of thee seede, the lytle holke or quantitie of the sayde seede at hys fyrste concauynge into thee womans mother maye be touched round about euery where of the mother: and as ye wold saye amplexed or embraced, and contayned (as the

nut

nut shel contayneth immediatly the nut) of thee inner walles or face of ꝯ matrix: and as the fede is vnifyed, shaped, & doeth increase, so doth the amplitude of thee matrix enlarge & ware bigger: so that at the last whē the infāt cometh to his ful growith or when the woman is greate wyth chylde: then thys coate or kell of the Matrix is as thynne as a bladder: where that in tyme of hys contractyon, or when thee woman is not wyth chyld the coate or walle of the Matrix is as good as halfan inche thycke.

Howe thee matrix varieth the thickenes & thynnes of hys coate

¶ Now ye shal vnderstand that the founde or bottome of thee matrix is not perfectly round bowlwyse: but rather lyke the forme of a mās hart as it is paynted, sauynge that thee partition or clefte in thee matrix betwene both corners, the ryght & the lefte, is not so profoundly dented in wardes

The founde of the Matrix.

warches as the clyfte in the hart: for in the inwarde vaulte, cautie or holones of thee Matrix, there is a certayne ſeame: whych begynninge in the myddle of thee foreparte of thee matrix at the wõbe porte doth paſſe forth by that foreſyde, and ſo by the bottome to thee hynder ſyde of thee matrix, & from thence along downe to the wombe porte on the backſyde as ye maye more euydentelye ſee in the fygure hereof: thys ſeame then is as it were a lyttle ſeparatyon, marke, or lympyte, deuydynge thee wombe in two equall partes or ſydes, the ryghte and the lefte. Not withſtandynge in the matrix there is but one vaulte, caute, holones, or amplytude: the foreſayde ſeame beynge but as it were a note, ſygne, or ſcace ſenſyble marke runnynge alonge thes ſydes and bottome of the wombe. But thys ſeame or lyne wher

A certayne ſeame deuydynge the matrix as it were in. ii. partes.

In the matrix but one holonelle.

where it passeth, the bottome of the mother or wombe, is more crasse, thycke and fleshye: propendyng, heldinge, hangynge or lokinge downe warde into the vault or amplytude of the wombe: the which lyne in the sydes is nothyng so manifest ne sensyble to be perceaued. Thus ye may see that the myddle parte of the bottome of the matrix is not so hye as the twoo corners; angles, on bothe sydes be.

¶ Other distinctions or separations in the matrix is there none: albeit that in tymes passed, dyuerse clarkes haue wrytten, and many other haue beleued, that ther shuld be seuen selles, or. vii. distinct places in thee matrix: in three of thee whyche on the ryght syde should onely men chyldren be cõceyued: & in the other thre on the left syde wemen chyldrẽ: and yf it chaunsed that thee seede were

Certayn erronious opiniõs of. vii. selles in the wombe.

were conceaued in thee ſeuenth ſell whyche was the myddelmoſte, then that ſhoulde become a monſter, half a man, & half a woman. The which all is but lyes, dreames, & fond fantaſyes: for the womans matrix, as I haue ſayd, is euen as a ſtronge bladder, hauing in it but one vniuerſall holenes: & the child when it lyeth in it, lyeth euer on thee one ſyde more then on thee other: the head beynge towardes one of thee corners or angles, and not vpryght towards the myddle brydge.

The matrix hath but one holones

Of the Mother Porte. Capit. vii.

Of the mother porte & the ſituation thereof.

THe entraūce of the matrix or wombe, is named thee wombe porte: or mother porte the which in ſubſtaūce and faſhion moch doeth reſemble the forme of an haukes bel or other lyttle

lytle mores belles: sauing that it is moch bygger, hauing a clefte ouerthwart the body therof, as ye maye more plainly perceaue by the figure hereof: And thys port of the matrix is of substaunce more thicke & crasse thē the rest of the same: & as it were a kernel rounde & clefte in the mydes. This wombe porte also is fastened and affixed to the vpper ende of the wombe passage, as al the rest of the wombe is.

¶ Howe beit the myddle parte of the wombe porte or the snowt there of, where it bosseth downe warde doeth touche no syde nor parte of the wombe passage, but onelye heldeth pendand wyse or loketh downwarde: and where as at sothe tyme that the man companieth wyth the woman, the pryupe passage is dylated and opened to thee quantytie of the mans pryuy parte, yet not wyth

ſtandinge, the mouth or the clykte of the wõbe porte is not moued therbyne dilated: excepte that it be at ſothe tyme that the matrix beynge apte & diſpoſed thereto, and other conditions requiſite, thys wombe porte do naturally open it ſelf, attractynge, drawing & ſucking into the wombe the ſede by a behement and natural delyre.

Thee wõbe well diſpoſed naturally attracteth ſede.

¶ Not withſtanding when the ſede is conceaued in at this gate or port, it doeth not alwayes remayne ther, but many tymes iſſueth out agayne for ſome indiſpoſition founde other in the place or in the ſeede it ſelfe: Albeit yf the ſeede be retayned ſtyll in the matrix, then doth the wõbe port cloſe it ſelfe ſo faſte & ſo firmely that the poynt of a nedle can not entre in thereat, wythout violence: & ſo doth remayne vntyll the tyme of delyueraunce: at what tyme agayne it delateth

The cloſenes of the matrix after the ſede conceaued.

lateth and openeth it self in soch amplytude and largenes that it is wonderfull to speake of.

¶ Of the vessels of sede, called the stones wyth other therto appertayninge.
¶Capit. viii.

One the syde of the matrix lyeth a stone: which bothe be called the womans stones, wherin is engendred the sede & sparme that cometh from the woman not so strong, ferme and myghtye in operation as thee seede of man: but rather weake, fluy, cold, and moyste, and of no greate fyrmytie: howbeit as conuenient, & propre for the pourpose, for thee whyche it was ordeyned, as thee seede of man for hys pourpose. These stones be nothynge so bygge as thee stoones of manne, but lesse, flatter, moche

faſhioned after the ſhape of a great and broade almonde. The ſubſtaũce and body of this ſtones is not made maſſyfe, or compacte, and ſafte as mens ſtones be: but as it were many lyttle kernelles ſet together betwen the which is moch holones & therin contayned a certayne thyn watery ſubſtaunce: thys ſubſtaunce of thee ſtones is inuolued & wapped withe a coate or thyn ſkyn verye fyrmelye annexed to the forelayd ſubſtaunce: whych alſo doeth receaue into hym ſelfe the ſede bringers: ye maye name the ſame coate in Latyn Superge-minalis.

¶ Of the ſede bringers. ¶Capit. ix.

Of the ſede bringers

The ſede bringers, called in Latyn Vaſa ſemen adferentia, be two baines & two artyres which come to theſe. ii ſtones: too eche one bayne and one artyre,

artyre: and take their beginning on thys wyse.

¶ Under the guttes, as ye maye se in the tygures hereof, be situate the great master vaine: in latin Caua vena And the greate artyre, Arteria magna. The mayster vayne hath his original of the lyuer, from whence it descendeth downwarde a long the loynes vntyl it attayne vnto the beginninge of Os sacrum: where the artyre (as thee worthyer) begynneth too mount vpon the maister vayne: and in this place they both deuyde themselues in .ii. partes, forke wyse. The right parte of the forke proceading into the right thygh and legge: the left into the lefte legge: the vayne euermore associate wyth thee artyre. The which hath his begynning of the hart: from whence he is descended, thorough the mydryffe to thys place: distributing to al places wher

The original of the great vayne.

by he palleth artyres.

Thoffice of the vaynes.

¶ The office of the great vayne is to conduct and carye from the lyuer (which is the bloud shop, wher the bloud is engendred) to all partes of the body bloud, therwith to nourish them. For to the great vayne wher they passe there cometh innumerable small vaynes on euerye syde: euen as to the greate ryuers manye small streames on euery syde do resorte.

The office of thartires

¶ Thoffice of the artyres is to spreade abrode in the body, the vytal and lyuely spyryte engendred in thee bosume of the harte: and to refresshe & tempre, the immoderate heate whiche otherwyse moughte be engendred in the bodye. The whych also, slepe we, or wake we, doo contynually moue and beate: therfore the motion of them is called the pulce: and looke after what maner the harte (whych

(which is the well of these artyres) doeth moue or styre it selfe, & euen so do they.

¶ The harte then and the artyres through hym haue two cõtrary motions: one is in closynge it selfe, and the other in dylatinge and openinge of it selfe: whych sorte of mouinges we call the beatynge of thee pulces: when the artyres do open them selues, then they attract, draw, or suck in fresshe ayre, to temper thee heate of the body wythall, and also spyrytuall & thyn pure bloud. But when they close theim selfe, then doo they expell mysty fumes, and hoate breathes, or vnnaturall vapoures, soch as of necessytye alwayes be engendred, in al partes of the body, by the whych bloud doth passe, for causes, to longe here to be alledged: neither is there any notable vayne vnassotiate of an artyre.

The hart & artyres haue. ii. cõtrary motions

NOw on the ryght ſyde and fore-part of the great vayne proceadeth a braunch, deriued from that place a longe the loynes downe wards to the head of the ryght ſtone: frō the ryght ſyde lykewyſe and foreface of the great artyre, deſcendeth a braūche thwarting ouer the great vaine downe towardes the right loynes, where it metyng wyth the foreſayd vayne braunche, before they emplāt them ſelfe in the head of the ſtone be come both as one bodye: here ſtrayght enlarging them ſelfe lytle and little ſtepel wyſe not fully round but flattiſhe before and behind, with the broder ende planting and infyxinge them ſelf into the head of the ryght ſtone.

The metig of ꝑ vayne and artyre.

AND at the vpper & ſmaller ende where this vayne braunche and artyre braunche do fyrſt mete, they begynne to entermyngle, enbrace, and enterlade

enterlade eche other in soch infinite wyse, wrythyng & deuyding thē sel-ues in thousandes of lytle braūches as it were hayres of the head, thee one embrasing, compassinge & ouer-thwarting the other so confusedlye that no witte can expresse the ryght maner and order of theyr cōmixtiō: call thys part then in englyshe, the bradyd body, in latyn Varicosoformem plexum: whose nether & broder ende, as I sayd before, affixed & implanted in the vpper head of thee righte stone, sendeth forth brāches and armes into the body of the same stone, manyfolde wyse dysperced, spred, & commyxt. The bradid body.

¶ And also into the skyn or couer of the stone called before supergeminalis from the sayd bradyd body, be there deriued many smal braūches moch lyke vnto thee lyttle small vaynes which ye se reddishe in a mans eye.

¶ And

¶ And loke what description and procesſe we haue made of the ryght ſyde ſede bringers, to the ryght ſtone: euen the ſame vnderſtand of the left ſyde ſede bringers to the left ſtone: ſauing that the bayne braunche which cometh to the left ſtone moſte cõmenly taketh his originall of the nether ſyde of the left kydney baine and not immediatlye of thee greate bayne as the other.

Baynes deriued to the botome of the matrix

¶ And ye ſhal vnderſtand agayne that from the forelayde bayne and artyre of eche ſide at the place, wher theyr fyrſte conjunction or metynge is proceadeth a certayne braunche of the bayne, allotyat wyth the artyre: whych both paſſe forth togeather to the found or bottome of thee mother or matrix, of that ſyde wher they ſtande: there delatyng & ſpreadynge them ſelfe abroade in manyfolde ſmaller braunches to the nouriſhe-

rishment of the body of the matrix.

¶ Of the offyce and vse of these sede bringers. ¶ Capit.x.

Thoroughe these sede bryngers bloud out of the vaynes and lyuely spyrite out of the artyres be deryuied, yea, or rather (too speake more properlye) attracte or drawen into thee stones: there by vertue and naturall instinction of the place altered, and chaunged: beynge fyrst confused together the bloud and the spyryte by mutuall amplexacions, or embracementes, of these two vesselles, thee vayne and the artyre being conioyned and vnytye in one verye bodye, fyrste begynnynge in thee bradyd bodye, and then after in thee whole bodye of the stone: So that thorowe the manyfolde & infynyte cyrculations

The sede procreat of thee vayne bloude and the artiriall bloude.

culations of thee attracted matter, by the conduyctes or vaynes infinitely intricate & writhed with a thousande revolutions, or turagayns (& all in the lyttle cõpasse of the bodye of the stones) the bloud & spyryte cõmixed together getteth another nature and propertie both in coloure & in effecte.

Note the iugyn & polycye of nature.

¶ And here ye shall vnderstande that most commenly alwayes, whẽ that nature is disposed too make a transmutacion of any matter, that can she not doo, oneles she haue a myne, shoppe, or workehouse wherin by continuall circulation of thee matter transmutable, she may bryge her purpose to passe: euẽ as mettals and other myneralles of the yearth haue theyr secrete & vnuisible vaynes, in which by dayly & longe cogitation, mouing, circulation, & hurling together, they be broughte frõ

one

one forme to another: and made metals of that the whyche before was none.

¶Of thys sorte of mynes there be iiii. princypall in the bodye of man. The fyrst is the myne of bloud whiche is the lyuer: in whō the iuyce of meat before of coulor white, is trāsmuted into red, made apte & fytte to nourisshe al partes of the bodye: attract and drawē out of the stomacke and guttes thorough the verye small and infynite lyttle vaynes into thee lyuer. iiii. mynes in mans body

¶The seconde myne is the harte, whych of the bloud attract & drawē from the great mayster vayne proceading out of the forsayd lyuer, into his parlers, doth engendre vehement and lyuely spyryte commyxed wyth depured and greatly elaborated bloud wythin thee selles of thee harte, frō thence sent forth through the The hart is the seconde myne

the artyres into al partes of the body: being in colour yealowiſhe, thin and hoate bloud.

The brayne the thyrde myne.

¶ The thyrd myne is the brayne of whom al the ſynewes take theyr original: in whom the wittye ſpirite, the ſpirites of mouing, & the ſpirits of all ſenſibilite be engendred, & thorow the ſynewes ſente to all partes of the bodye: for all ſoche partes as moue and feele, haue that by reaſon of ſynewes deryued vnto that places from the head.

The fourth myne be the ſtones.

¶ The fowrth myne is the ſtones, in whom by commyxtion of all thee other thre forſayde metalles of the body, that is to ſay, bayne bloud, arteriall bloud, and lyuely ſpirites engendred in thee head, is engendred and produced ſede: whych beſtowed in hys due place becommeth lyke in perfectiō to the creature frō whence it came: that is to ſaye of mankinde

man

manne.

¶But ye ſhall vnderſtande, that thee receauynge of thee ſeede into the ſtones, is not that there ſhuld be anye one onely caue, holoneſſe, ſell, vaulte, or parler in the bodye of the ſtone, wherein it myght be receaued and retayned, lyke as the holoneſſe of an egge the meate beyng out of it or of an haſel nut the kernell oute of it, but far otherwyſe, for thee ſtones (chiefflye in man more thē in womā) be maſſyfe, not hard, but dylicate, & ſofte as a ſoft kernell, full of ſmall & al moſte vnſenſyble whyte vaynes, reuoluing themſelf in & out a thouſand folde, & manyfold wiſe intricat together: within the which the ſede is conueyed, caried, concocted, or dygeſted, and altered by vertue of thee whyte fleſſhe, whyche intercurreth and intermyngleth it ſelfe euerye where betwene the foreſaid vaines:

How the ſede is receaued into the ſtones.

lyke

lyke as the earth doth entrecurre, & entermingle it selfe betwene and amonge thee small fybres, berdes, or hayres of rootes. The whyte coate also or walles of the sayde vaynes, helping not a lyttle to the transmutaciō of the colour frō red to whyte.

Howe thee colour of ẏ sede is trāsmuted.

¶ For euery thing that is lyquid, as the sede is, receaueth alwayes a nature of the place, myne, or cōduyt, by which it rūneth & passeth: so that when the cōduyt is very small, and narow & long withal, thē the liqeur that passeth through it, receaueth & sauoureth so moch the more the nature & conditiō of that vessel or conduyte. As for an example: yf there were a conduyt or pype made of led, whose length were .x. fote. And the inner compasse, holonesse, or cauitie of thee same but so moche that an hayre mought passe thorow it: then say I: that a gallon or quart of water passing

Liquedthinges sauoureth of thee nature of ẏ vessels thorow which it runneth.

ter passing & thrilling through that narow conduyt, shuld sauour moch more of the nature & qualite of lead thē though the holones of the afore sayde conduyt, beynge styll of the aboue named lengthe, were so large, that a bowle myght entre and passe thorowe thee same: for thys reason, that when the water hathe to passe throw so narow passage, it maketh the longer iourney and yeldeth the smaller shred or streen: and therfore is touched more immediatly and interiye of thee insydes or inner walles of the conduycte. And further, well ye wote that a lyttle quantitie is soner ouercome and altered then a great: as a sponefull of wyne standing all nyght in a peuter or braslen pot, shall sauoure moche more of the pot, then a pynte of the same. Lyke wyse yf a man woulde coole hoate drincke by pouringe of it oute of one

A lytle quantite soner ouercome the a greater.

pot or cup into another: ſoner & more perfectly ſhall the circumſtant colde ayre alter and coole it, being poured out very ſoftly, making therof a fyne & ſmall ſtreen, then yf he dyd thee ſame haſteli: And truely this engin & pollycy doeth nature vſe in euery part where ſhe cauſeth any notable tranſmutation, making the matter tranſmutable to paſſe thorow longe ſtrayghtes & narow turagayne lanes: the matter bowing, enclininge, and aptinge it ſelfe alwayes to thee diſpoſitiõ and nature of the veſſels, through which it roleth or runneth: ſo that the ſparme or ſede of man or woman, beyng attracted by the fore ſayd ſeede bringers into the ſtones, paſſeth by many narow ſtrayghtes whych beynge before bayne bloud, and artyre bloude, by vertue of thee places, thorough whych it hadde to paſſe becommeth from red colour to white

The politici of nature.

whyte, and of moch more perfection then it was before: for thys transmutation of bloude into sparme is not onely in coulors, but also in properties & absolute perfection. what greater wondre or myracle is there, where in we maye knowledge and behold the omnipotensy of god, thē to consyre how that, of the meat & drincke whych we dayly do eate, by digestion, fyrste of the stomacke, the fyne iuyce, therof is separated from the drosse and grosser part, & then after at the second hande, the forelayd iuyce passing thorow the guttes attracte & drawen vnto thee lyuer thorowe infynite small vaynes, there transmuted into bloud: frō the lyuer sent into the greate maysler vayne: frō the whych the harte drawynge parte, transmuteth certayne therof into artyre bloud: agayne the stones drawynge other parte maketh

The transmutatiō of bloud into sparme.

How meate & drincke is transmuted into bloud.

thereof & of the artyre bloud, whorled, circulate & coagitate togeather, sparme: whych sparme bestowed & conceaued where it shuld be, becommeth mankynde.

The sede in woman not so fyrme as in man.

¶ This foresayd sede, as we sayde before, is nothing so firme, perfeict, absolute, & mighty in woman as in man: & yet can you not call this any imperfection or lacke in woman: for the womā in her kynd, & for thoffice & purpose wherefore she was made is euen as absolute & perfecte as mā in his kynd: nether is woman to be called (as some do) vnperfecter then man (for because that man is more myghtier & strong: the woman weaker, more feble) for by this reasō the horse, the lion, the oliphant, camel & many other beastes should be called more perfect than mā: to the whiche man is not able to compare in natural myght and strength.

But

¶But truely cõparing one man to another, ſoche as be gelded & want the genitoꝛies be moch febler, weke and effeminate then other: in voyce woman lycke, in geſture and condition nile, in ſaftnes of ſkin, & plumpneſſe of the body fatter and rounder in ſtrength & force impotẽt nothing manly ne bold, the whych imbecillitie in thẽ may well be named imperfection: foꝛ imperfectiõ is whẽ that any particular creature doeth lacke any properte, inſtrument, oꝛ qualite, whych communelye, by nature is in all other oꝛ the moꝛe parte of that kynde: comparynge it too other of the ſame kynde, and not of another kynde.

Who be vnperfecter & one then the other.

¶Thus we haue ſufficiently talked of the ſede bringers and ſtones, wyth theyꝛ offyces: now ſhall I declare what becommeth of the ſeede beynge thus engendered, and whe-

ther it is conueyed.

¶ Of the waye by the whych the ſeede is ſent from the ſtones to the angles or corners of the matrix. Capi. xi.

AT the lower ende, and fote or baſe, of the braded body where it is infixed & planted into the head of the ſtone on the backeſide half of the ſtone there is the begynninge of another veſſel, whych may be called the ſede caryer: in Latyn, Vas ſemen deferens, whoſe bodye is whyte & hardyſhe, lyke an harde ſynue: and from that parte where it taketh hys begynnynge, it palleth downe wardes to thee ſyde of the ſtone hoopinge and compaſſinge alonge the ſyde thereof (as ye may more expreſſye perceaue in the fygure herof) tyll it come too the lower ende or baſe of thee ſtone, from thence agayne reſtynge or remounting

Of the ſede caryers.

mountyng vpward, crepyng along the other syde of the same stone, tyll it come and attayne in maner to the myddle region of thee stone on that syde: al the way as it crepeth firmely fastened & affixed to the bodye of the stones, as thee eye braunches do fasten theym selue to the walles, by whych they crepe.

¶ The belly and innerside of the forsayd sede caviar, whereby it cleaueth to thee oute syde or face of thee stone, beynge flatly the backe or outer syde thereof roundysshe and smothe. From the begynnynge and head of this vessel to this later ende in maner of equall corpulencye or byggenesse: but infynitelye wethed as an adder or yele when they slyde faste or hastely, make of theyr longe bodyes, manye halfe hoopes, halfe cyrcles, or wethes neare ioyned togeather: how be it, these wythes be

not so frequente & thycke in the woman as in the man. Therfore thys parte of the sede cariars may be called the worme: in latyn, Corpus lumbricosum: for because that it hath many conuolutions as wormes lyinge togeather haue.

Of the part called the worme.

¶ And yf ye be disposed to seperate this forenamed worme frō thee face of the stone wyth a sharpe knyfe: ye shall perceaue no maner of holones or cauitie of bayne or other conduyt but as it were a ruggednes by reason of separation from the parte to whom it was before so suredye annexed. And yet no doubte there is verelye in it cauytie and holonesse by and thorow the whyche seede is caryed into the angles of the Matrix.

¶ Now then when thys forsayd wormye body hath attayned to the myddle regyon (as it were) of thee stone,

stone, it beginneth to departe from thee bodye of thee stoone, and is no more (as it was before) thycke wethed, but playne, smoth, and round: lyke a rounde synewe wyth an vnsensyble holonesse, departyng from the stoone alonge the inside of thee bellye ouerthwartynge the guttes, to the angle or corner of the matrix, on the ryght syde thereof (yf it proceade frō the ryghte stone) & on thee lefte syde (yf it come from thee lefte stoone) and that not strayte or forth ryght, but somewhat bowynge and crokyng it selfe in two or .iii. crokes by the waye. Thys sede cariars receaueth the seede confycted, concocted, and digested in thee stones and foresayde sede bringers, conueying and directinge thee same from thee stones to thee inside of thee corners of the Matrix: so that they whyche do open dead women, shal alwayes

perceaue

perceaue in the holonesse of the matrix these .ii. angles or corners specially bedewed or imbued wythe a whyte slymye and thyn cleare matter, which no doubt, is the womans sede. And in wemen hauyng greate and feruent desyre to any man, thys sede doeth yssue from thys forsayd place downe alonge to the womans preuye passage moystryng al that parte, as it were wyth a dewe. Aristotle and other mo, do suppose that thys sede in woman serueth for noo other pourpose but onelye to recyte, moue and styre the woman to pleasure. But some peraduenture wolde thincke that thys were but a symple and an ydle or slender pourpose: which yf they dyd more nearely cõsydre the matter, shoulde perceaue it to be a iuste, greate, and necessary cause. For yf that the God of nature had not instincted, and insette in the

body

bodye of man and woman soche a vehement, and ardent appetyte and lust, the one lawefullye to companye wyth the other: neither man ne woman woulde neuer haue bene so attentyfe to the worckes of generatiõ and encreasemẽt of posteritie, to the vtter decaye in shorte tyme of all mankynde. For ye shal heare some wemen in tyme of theyr trauayle, meued thorowe great payne and intollerable anguyshe, forsweare and vowe them selfe, neuer to companye wyth a man agayne: yet after that the panges be passed, wythin shorte whyle for entyre loue too theyr husbandes and singuler natural delyte betwene man and woman they forgette both the sorowe passed & that that is to come. Soche be the pryuie worckes of God, and soch be the prickes of nature: whyche neuer createth no specyall pleasure vnaccompanied

The prickes of nature

No ioye without some sorowe.

panyed wyth some sorowe: neyther is ther for the most part any sorow, but that it hath annexed some ioye or cõfort, lesse or more, to alleuiate & lyghten the burthen and weyght of displeasure.

Here is declared the situation of the bladder in women. Capi.xii.

NOwe for the vicinite & neyghborhode that is betwene the pryuye passage and the bladder, here I wyll declare a lyttle the nature of the bladder. The bladder in woman is sytuate and set vpon the forepart of the mother, whose neck is annexed, fastened, and buttie wythin the pryuy passage vpõ the forepart therof: as ye may se in the fygure hereof so that it is very hard, to seperate the one from the other. Thys necke of the bladder in women is moch shorter

shorter then in men: the whych neck is enuironned and cõpassed wyth a muskle, called thee bladder muskle: as it were with a brode & flat hoope ring, fyrming & claspyng the vryne passage in soch wyse, that no vryne can yssue out of the bladder, tyl soch tyme that this muskle do opẽ it self, and lyrence it therto. whych thyng cometh to passe other whẽ the bladder is ouercharged wyth vryne, or els that the vrine al though that it be but lyttle in quantitie, yet haue come Colerick qualite with it: whyche for the sharpenes & aegrenes of the qualitie prickyng and tickelynge the muskle, causeth it to open it selfe many tymes, for lyttle quantitie. &c

The muskle of ỹ bladder

how ỹ bladder muskle is forced to open it self

The body of the bladder is rounde, into the whyche a lyttle aboue thee necke therof entreth the secõd vrine conduytes deriuied from eche kydney one.

The discripcion of thee bladder.

¶ And

¶ And here ye muſte fyrſte vnderſtande that on eche ſyde of the great mayſter vayne and lykewyſe of the artyre is ſytuate a kydney: in latyn called Ren. And to euerye of theym from the ſayd greate vayne & great artyre is there deryued a braunche of the vayne, and another of the artyre: by the which braũches the kydnees doo attracte and drawe bloude vnto theym: the whych ſo drawen, they do (by theyr natyke office) ſeperate and deuyde, from the waterye part: ſending forth the water other wyſe called vryne, downe to the bladder through the vryne baynes or cõduytes.

Of thee stone engendereth in thee backe.

¶ In theſe kydnees is ther many tymes in a greate numbre of people engendered the grauel or ſtone: whiche is called thee ſtone in the backe: the whych when it is broken, either of it ſelfe, or elles by vertue of medycynes

rynes, the grauell, rubbell, or pieces therof, descende from the raynes or kidnees into the bladder, by the fore named bryne conduyctes: and so frō the bladder out at the yarde: where yf thee pieces be rockye or bygge it causeth too the partye in the voydynge of them vntollerable paynes and tormente. And note that for the moste parte the ryghte kydneye euer more standeth hyer then thee lefte.

¶ Nowe agayne ye shall vnderstande that when thee bryne, pysse, or water is ones entred thorow the foresayde bryne conduytes into the bladder, it can not returne vpwarde agayne the way that it came (were the bladder neuer so ful) for because that wher as the sayd bryne cōduytes do entre into the bladder in the inner face of the bladder, ther be set before the mouth or gul of the cōduits certayne

Thee bryne ones entred into the bladder can not reuert.

certayne lyttle skynny flappes, whi che suffre any thing to entre in: but when it is ones entred, these skinny flappes close the passage & defende, that nothing can rebound, ne reflue backe agayne: euē as it is in a payre of bellowes, whyche haue euer a great hole on the one syde therof, to let into thee bellowes greate store of wynde or ayre at once: but when the bellowes is full of wynde, yf ye stop the nose therof with somwhat, ther wyl none therof returne agayne out by that waye. The flappes of lether crossinge & defendinge the passage: yea, the more vehemētlye & the harder that ye presse both sydes of thee bellowes together, the faster & more stifly doth the flappes stop the way, and cleaue to the bordes of the bellowes: the violence & force of the wind closynge and stoppynge hys owne waye: so that the bellowes woulde

soner

soner breake, thē that the ayre shuld come out there. And euen so it is in the bladder, sauynge that the sayde skynnye flappes of thee bladder, be more craftelye, properly, and artificyallye wrought then any man can deuyse.

¶ when there is then any notable quantite or qualite of the bryne gathered togeather in the bladder, the bladder muskle naturally doth opē it selfe, & letteth it forth, passing thorough the priuie passage on the fore parte therof.

Thee stone engendred in the bladder.

In this bladder also as in the raynes is there in manye people engendred the stone, whereof cōmenly ensueth the strangury, dissurye, wyth other dyseases: the stone engendred in thys place, yf it be of any notable quantite, is very hard or rather vnpossible to be dissolued, or cured with out insition and cuttinge oute. But

wemen be not so prone ne apte to engendre thee stone in thee bladder as men be, because thee necke of theyr bladder is shorter and larger, howe beit not withstanding dyuers of thē be here wyth greuously encombred.

¶ Of the vaynes whych resorte to the Matrix and the partes thereof. Itē of the termes and theyr course with the causes thereof. ¶ Capit. xiii.

Inasmoch as the absolute vnderstandinge of the nature of thee termes in women can not wel be perceaued, except fyrste it be knowen what vaynes, howe many, from whence, and after what sort they do attayne to the Matrix: therefore fyrst I wyl entreate of them: & then consequently of the termes.

¶ Vaynes then notable, whyche maye be perceaued by Anothomye

to

to reach from seuerall partes of the great Vena caua, or mayster vayne, to the matrix and thee partes thereof be thre, to whom for the more cleare distincte, and cuydent doctryne sake I wyll geue thee distincte and dyuers names: the fyrst shalbe named the bottome vaynes of the Matrix: Thee seconde, thee necke vaynes of the Matrix. The thyrde, the share vaynes.

Three notable vaynes resortyng to the matrix.

¶ The bottome vaynes be they, whych proceade and take theyr begynnynge at the seede bringer vaynes, frō whence they attayne to the bottome or founde of thee Matrix, there dylatynge them selfe abroade in manyfolde small slyppes nourysshinge thee bodye of the matrix: as hath bene sayde already in the ende of the.ix. Chapter.

The bottome vaynes of the Matrix.

¶ As touchinge the necke vaynes of the Matrix, ye shall vnderstande

The necke vaynes.

that in the forsayde. ix. chapter I shewed you howe that thee greate mayster bayne and the great artire assotiate together, whē they attayn about Os sacrum, they begyn to deuyde thē selfes in two partes forkwise of the which the right (and so lyke wyse the left) part of the forke is rediuyded in other twoo partes forkewyse also: whereof the vppermost & greatest bayne passeth down along tyll it come to the hoocle bone, ouer whom it proceadeth into thee vtter part of the thigh, & so along downe to the legges & feete. The innermost and left or smallest part or bayne of this seconde dyuision, where it parteth from the vppermooste, passeth downe alonge vntyll it come to thee great hole which is alwayes in the share bone, thorough which it entereth into the inner part of the thigh or flanke. But by the waye or it attayne

tayne the sayd hole of the sharebone it sendeth forth dyuers slyppes and small braunches in the necke of the matrix, & the nether part of the body of the matrix. And also to ỹ bladder as ye maye more clearelye see in the fygure hereof.

Of the neck vaynes of ỹ Matrix.

¶ The share vaynes take theyr beginninge at the insyde of the aboue named vppermost & greater vayne euen at the place wher it beginneth to passe ouer thee hoocle bone from whence this slyp is deriued on eche syde, that is both the ryght and the lefte, vnto the myddle of thee sharebone: where, in men it sendeth forth braunches into thee skyn that coue-reth the pzyuye part and the coddes and also the Perineū, whych is the place, that is betwene thee foundament & the yarde: Jn wemen thys vayne where it attayneth the myddle parte of the sharebone, it deryu-

Thee share vaynes.

eth & ſpreadeth it ſelfe into thee lappes ſydes, or extreame ende of theyr pryuie paſſage: & alſo in the ſaid perineum: And thus ſhall ſuffyce for the declaratiõ of the vaynes which reſort to ỹ matrix & her partes: ſaue that ye muſt vnderſtande, that loke what ordre or proceſſiõ of vaines cometh to the Matrix, from the ryght ſyde: the ſame ſelfe ordre is likewiſe in the lefte ſyde. And agayne, that none of theſe vaynes runne to thee matrix or other where, vnaſſociate of an Artyre.

What is meant by thys worde Termes.

¶ Now to come to the declaration of the nature of termes, ye ſhall vnderſtande that they be called in Latyn Menſtrua, ſo: becauſe that ones in a moneth they happen alwayes too womankind, after. xiiii. or. xv. yeres of age paſſed (being in theyr perfeit health): Jn Engliſhe they be named termes, becauſe they retourne

eftſoones

eſtſoones at certayn ſeaſons, times and termes: & ſome name thē theyr flowers: what name ſoeuer ye geue vnto it ye ſhal wyte, that the thing meant therby is nothynge elles but the iſſuynge of certayne bloud comprehended in the baynes of the matrix, there by lyttle and lyttle, collected and gathered betwene terme & terme, and ſo agayne at wonte & accoſtumed tymes by nature expelled and ſent forth.

¶The which bloud, the matrix baynes do attract frō the great Vena caua into thys part: & that not ſodenly or at onte, but very ſoberelye and wyth moch leaſure, yea, ſo moche as ther is ſpace betwene, the one hauing of the flowes and the other (whych is communely three weekes more or leſſe accordynge to the womans wonte) ſo longe be theſe ſayd baynes in fyllynge and yf they were ſooner full,

ſoner alſo wolde they ſende it forth agayne: For when they be once repleniſhed they can not conueniently or naturally contayne or drawe anye more, tyll they be lyghted and diſcharged of that that is drawen already.

Wherfore at the forſayd certaine circuites & termes the ſmal endes of theſe matrix vaines, open thẽ ſelfes in the innerface or ſuperfycye of the matrix, after an inſenſyble & ſecrete pryuy ſort, & ſo let to paſſe forth this bloud: which as I haue ſayd is called the womans termes.

The cauſe of the ordonaunce of termes.

The cauſe and reaſon why Nature created thys perpetuall courſe of termes in women is thys: for ſo moch as almighty God had ſo inſtitute that womẽ ſhuld be the veſſels, wherin the ſede of mankynd ſhulde be conceaued, effourmed, or faſhioned, augmẽted, nouriſhed, & brought te to perfectiõ.

perfection: Thys coulde not be done vnlesse there were a commodious, & conuenient place, to this office assigned and destinate wherefore nature created thee wombe or Matrix to be the sayd receptacle, & house of offyce wherin she moughte at her leasure worke her deuyne feates aboute the sede once conceaued.

¶ Agayne it is not ynough the sede to be placed, vnlesse also it haue fode and nourishmente, to the encrease & augmentacio of the same: wherfore prudēt lady, nature full wysely hath prouyded that ther should alwayes be prest & readye a continuall course and resorte of blonde in the vaynes of thee Matrix, as a verye naturall course, spryngе, fountayne, or wel, euermore readye to arrouse, water, & nourish the feature so sone as it shal be conceaued: yea although the womā do neuer conceaue, other because

she

she accõpanieth not wyth mã, other els for some other infirmitie: yet is there no faute in nature, who hathe prepared place: & foode to be at al tymes in readynes.

¶ which fode although it is ordayned for thys necessarye purpose, yet when the purpose faileth (as it doth whẽ there is no feature in the wõbe to be fed therwith) it shuld be to the place but a burthen, & vnprofytable loade, there too remayne or lynger: wherefore thẽ I say at her set & prescript time she laboreth to cleare her self of it & to expel it as superfluous and seruinge to no vse. The whych thing whẽ she hath so done, yet vnto the said vaynes of this cõtinuall sprĩg, resorteth of new agayn other freshe bloud in the place of that, ẏ is departed: which by lyttle & lyttle coling into thẽ, in the wont circuite of tyme refylleth theym, & then yet yssueth

sueth agayne: and so this continual course doeth kepe alwayes in wemẽ frõ theyr youth tyll they come to about fyfty yeares of age a litle more or lesse, at what time naturally this spring dryeth awaye: whych whẽ it is gone, it is impossible for thee woman to beare anye mo chyldren: for were the womã neuer so yonge and lusty, yet if she neuer had her termes (as some soch ther be) she shal neuer also haue no children: al beit, it may be that she maye conceaue: but thee sede cõceaued can not proue but melteth & issueth forth againe for lacke of nutriment.

Why they that haue no termes cannot bare chyldren.

¶ Item ye shall note that where as some wryte and say that the womens termes folow the course of the mone, so that in ỹ full or in the wane of ỹ mone they shuld alwayes come: thys is not trewe, for they haue thẽ at one tyme and other in al seasons of

Termes come not to al women like

of the mone: Agayne as they come not to al wemen after one sorte or at one season, so is thee tyme of theyr durance not all one in euery woman for in some they lynger vpõ them, v vi. vii. yea. viii. dayes at eche terme to their great effeoblishmẽt & strõge paines in the backe: In some other commonlye they passe not the space of. iii. dayes at the vttermost where fore, soch sustayne litle or no paynes at that tyme.

¶ To be shorte all wemen (for the mooste parte) whyche be of very delycate & moyst complettions (as the sanguyne chiefly be) haue greatest aboundaunce of termes, and longer tyme doeth it endure vppon theym: And contrarye soche as be drye and collerycke, other by nature or labor, and trauel, and soch that be of complection colde, haue least store of termes, and lesse tyme doo they indure

vpon

vpon theym: after what maner the feature conceaued is fed and nouriſſhed with thys blounde (matter at other tymes of the termes) I wyl declare when that I haue ſome what fyrſte ſhewed the nature of certayne caules wherein thee feature conceaued is wrapped and inuolued.

¶Of the thre caules or wrappers wherein the infant is lapped. ¶Capit. xliii.

The ſede conceaued into the wõbe or matrix of the mother, anon it is amplected, clypped, and embraſed of thee inner face of thee matrix thee mouth or porte thereof in the meane whyle cloſed and ſhutte exquiſitely. The ſeede then when it hath bene a certayne lyttle ſpace in the wombe, by the naturall heate, or rather by thee inſette and ingenyte vertue of that

The featur conceaued is wrapped in thre caules,

that place, is enuironned & enclosed round with thre dyuers coates, caules, or wappers, whyche in latyne they call (Inuolucra.)

The fyrſte caule.

¶ The fyrſte and mooſte immediate or neareſte to thee bodye of thee conception, is a verye thynne and cleare caule or ſkynne, whyche contayneth roumde aboute, thee whole feature: & yet is faſtened, to no part of the feature, but only at the nauel, by certayne baynes and Artyres, whereof we wyll ſpeake anon: thys caule in Greke is called Amnios, in Latyn Agnina: for cauſe it is and dyſtrate as lambes be: The midwifes commonlye call it thee coyfe or byggyn of thee chylde, and ſome call it the chyldes ſherte: the whyche alſo many tymes proceadeth alone with the chylde, ether bypon the chyldes head, or one of the armes or legges. And then the women reſerue it as a thyng

And no doubt but that the auncientes which gaue the name of (secunde or secūdina) to this wapper, gaue the name of the hole to ꝑ parte, for thys terme (secunde or secundina) is proper and most due to the after byrth: the whych afterbyrthe, is nothinge els but an issuing forth, & proceding of these.iii. wappers or caules, together with soch grosse extrements as haue ben engendred and remaynynge in the wombe during the tyme of conception: and that immedyatly after the chyld is fyrst proceded and come to lyghte: for fyrste issueth the infant, and thē secondly, the fore sayd afterbyrth: & therefore it maye be justely called the seconde byrth or secondyne.

¶Thys wapper or caule then doth not vniuersally, and in euery parte, compasse, and couer thee infante as the other.ii. wappers do: but onely

the myddle region, as it were from the vpper part of the waſt to the ſhare of the infante: ſo that it is cõpaſſed wyth thys wrapper, as wythe a broade hoope ringe: thee latitude or bredth whereof is commonlye to be eſtemed about the breadthe of. vi. or viii. fyngers: & ſo gyrdeth the chyld round about the body thereof, as it were a broade gyrthe or ſwadlynge band: but yet ye muſt not vnderſtãd that it ſhoulde touche immediatlye the bodye of the infant: for betwene thys and the body thereof (as I haue declared before) be thee forelayde two other caules or wrappers, whyche generally incloſeth rounde thee hole corps of the infante: where as this hoope caule, compaſſeth & coureth but the myddle region thereof onelye.

The office of the hoope caule.

¶ The offyce and propertie of thys wrapper is ſoche, fyrſte thee vtter face

face of it cleaueth and is affyxed or baſted very exactly to the inner face and walles of the matrix by meenes of vnnumerable ſmall vaynes & arteryes whych at thys tyme do ſhewe them ſelfes more clearely in the face of the matrix thē at any other tyme the which alſo cleue vnto this hoope caule in euerye parte thereof touchinge the ſame matrix: ſo that the ſayde hoope caule, and thee inner ſyde of the Matrix be baſted, verye thicke togeather by the immediate meanes of the ſayd vaynes & braunches euen moch lyke as the body of the yupe tree baſteth, & faſteneth it ſelf vnto the walls or trees wherby it creapeth by many herye fibres or ſmall thredes.

¶Thys conunction betwene the matrix & the hoope caule reacheth vniuerſally ſo far & ſo broad as the latitude and longitude of the hoope

caule doth extende it ſelfe rounde a-
boute in the matrix: And theſe fore-
ſayde baynes and Artyres doo not
onely knyt and vnite theſe twoo to-
geather, but alſo entereth into thee
ſubſtaunce of the hoope caule at eue
ry parte therof, & wythin the ſayde
ſubſtaunce of the hoope caule thys
many folde ſmall braunches mete
and entermyngle thee one wyth the
other, the baynes wyth the baynes
and thartyres with the artires, ſo &
in theyr recoũtre and metynge, they
produce alwayes bygger and byg-
ger baynes and artyres (but fewer)
tyll at the laſt all theſe be become .ii.
great baynes, and .ii. great artyres
the whyche .iiii. veſſels from hence
proceade together, paſſe, and perce,
thorough the other two caules ſpo-
ken of before, & ſo entereth into the
nauell of the chylde: ſo that the thre
caules by the meanes hereof be at-
tached

tached, nayled, & fastened to the chil
des nauell, and when they be entred
into the nauel, the two vaynes dege
nerate in one: the whych from thys
place mounteth vpwarde along the
inner superficye of the bellye, vntyll
it haue attayned into the liuer wher
it entering, deuydeth it selfe agayne
into many slyppes: so that no doubt
the blond is caried through this na
uell vayne from the vaynes of thee
mothers Matrix into thee lyuer of
thee chylde: from whence agayne it
is attracted into all partes nourt she
able of the infante.

¶ Agayne thee two artyres passe
from the nauel downeward, the one
alonge the right syde of the childes
bladder, the other alonge ther lefte,
tyll it attayne to thee share artyres,
whereof we spake afore: throughe
these artyres lyuely spyrite, & freshe
ayre, is deryuied oute of the mother

into the chyld, wher wyth the natu-
rall heate of the chylde is dimfied &
refreſhed.

¶ And theſe .ii. artires with the fore
ſayd nauel vayne, when the child is
borne begin to whither & drye, euery
day more & more, & become moch ly-
ke a harpſtring without any holow
neſſe or cauitie: yet ye ſhal note that
there is another veſſell, whyche ta-
keth hys originall at the bottome,
found, or vpper parte of the chyldes
bladder, & extēded it ſelf to the nauel
of the infant, through whych it paſ-
ſeth vntyl it come betwene the fyrſte
and the ſeconde caule without thee
whych way the chylde doeth expell the vryne. childes body, where, by a priuy iſſue
deuyſed by nature for the ſame pur-
poſe, is expelled the vryne of the in-
fant, proceding by this vrine vayne
frō the bladder as partely was ſpo-
kē of before: & part of this vrine vay
ne which is wythin the body, when

the

the child is borne dieth & wydereth away as I sayd of the other.

¶ The inner superfycie or face of this Chorion is very strongly affixed and fastened to the vtter superfycye of the secounde caule named Allantoides.

¶ As for the bastynge that is betwene the Matrix & Chorion, manye tymes is weakened & effeoblysshed by reason of euyll, flegmatycke, or colerycke humours ther aboute betwene the bastinges conceaued: wyth the ouer moch habounding do cloye the sayde bastynge baynes or stringes: whereby manye tymes the one seuereth from the other, before conuenient season and so causeth abortement: The mouthes or speckes of the baynes in the Matrix, whereby it cleueth to Chorion be called in latyn (Acetabula) & (Cotiledones) for what cause or vppon what reason, it is bothe

nedeleſſe, and vnprofytable here too be rehearſed.

The ſubſtaunce of Chorion.

CAgayne the ſubſtaunce of thys Chorion is not thyn lyke a ſkyn, bladder or caule, but of all other partes of the body, it may be moſt worthely reſembled to the ſplene or melte in a man or beaſt. The corpulency or thickeneſſe whereof is as moch or more as the thyckeneſſe of the thumbe. The couloure ſwartyſſhe blacke: of whych colour alſo the bloud therein contayned, is as thee remayne & refuce of the purar, attract and drawē naturally of the infant by the aboue ſayde nauell vaynes So that to be ſhorte Chorion is thee immediate receptacle and receauer of all the vaynes and Artires, to be deduced from the Matrix to thee chylde, and thee chylde receaueth onely at hys hand the. ii. vaynes & artyres: whyche by the way as thei paſſe, & perſe throughe the

the other two caules, towardes the chyldes nauel, they send into eche of thee caules innumerable small eye vaynes & artyres whereby ỹ caules be sustayned and encreased also.

¶ The termes then whyche were wont at other tymes to stooze theim selfes in the matrix vaynes, & at certayne circuites to issue forth. Nowe when there is a feature or chylde in the same Matrix cõceaued, they proceade nomore forth (as superfluous) but remayne and be reserued to thee necessary nutrimente of the feature: and some parte therof reflueth, & is reuerted to the womãs brestes, ther to become mylke as shalbe sayde in the nerte chapter: And nowe hath nature her pourpose, wherefore she made & created this course of bloud as hath ben wrytten sufficientlye in the chapter before.

¶ But here ye shall note that they

be

be greatelye deceaued and abuſed, whych cal the termes, the womans purgation, or the clenſynge of theyr bloud: as who ſhuld ſay: that it were the refuſe, droſſe, & vylar part of the other bloude remayninge in the body, naturally euerye moneth ſequeſtrate, and ſeperated from the purer for the vylite & euyll qualite therein comprehended: for vndoutedly thys bloud is euen as pure & holſome as al the reſt of the bloude in any parte of the body els.

The termes be of as holſō bloud as any other part in the body.

¶ It is to be thought that nature wold fede the tēder & dilicate infant in the mothers wombe, with the refuſe of the bloud, or not rather wyth the pureſt of it? yes, and therefore & for becauſe that ſhe would that the pure bloud commynge from the matrix vaynes, ſhould be made yet purer, ſhe ſuffereth not the ſame to entre immediatly into the infante, but fyrſt

fyrste vseth another meane and sen-
deth it in to Chorion or thee hoope
caule, (as I haue sayd before) wher
truely it hath a certayne circulatiō,
and another digestion, whereby it
is defecate, and clensed, very exqui-
sytelye: by the dylygencie of nature,
attenuated and fyned, and so at the
last sent forth into the infāt: leauing
al the grosser part in the spungie bo
dy of the hoopecaule.

The chylde
being in the
wōbe nou-
rished of ꝑ
pure bloud

¶ Yet moch more are to be detested
and abhorred thee shamefull lyes &
slaunders that Plinie, Albertus Magnus
de secretes Mulierum, and dyuers other
mo, haue wrytten, of the venimous
and daūgerous infectyue nature of
the womās flowres or termes: The
whych all be but dreames & playne
dotage: to rehearse ther fon wordes
here were but losse of ynke & paper:
wherfore let them passe wyth theyr
auctours.

Slaunders
of ꝑ termes

whych

Whyche of the thre Matrix vaynes contayne the termes: and howe the mylcke commeth to the womans breſtes.

Capit. xv.

I Shewed you here before that to three dyfferente partes and Regions of the Matrix, there reſorted from three dyfferente partes of Vena caua three ſundrye vayne ſyppes: Nowe whych of theſe ſyppes ſhould bringe the bloud called the termes into the Matrix, or from whyche of them the termes ſhoulde proceade, it is harde clearely to diſcuſſe: but onely by lykely coniectures: And yet it is a thyng very neceſſarye to be knowen for thee rediar aduertyſemente, howe medicines for that purpoſe ſhoulde be applyed in that place: when nede ſhuld be eyther to prouoke the termes by ſome caſeltie ſtopped, or els cõtrarye, to reſtrayne theim immoderatelye flowyng: for yf the bottome vaynes of the Matrix doo contayne onelye thee termes, then ſhould any medycyne conueyed vnder neth, profyte nothyng: except it be cõueyed ſo farre vp that it maye attayne wyth-

in

in the holoneſſe of the Matrix, the which is verye lyttle, when thee woman is not wyth chylde.

¶Agayne yf the necke vaynes of the matrix do only contayne theſe termes, thē ne ded medycynes to be applied noo farther then to that place: as for the thyrde Matrix vaynes, there is none that doth ones ſuſpecte, the termes to proceade frō them But many there be whiche do ſuppoſe the termes to iſſue both at the necke vaynes, and at the bottome vaynes alſo, but moſt notably at the necke vaynes: for bycauſe ſaye they, that theſe vaynes doo appeare more cōſpicuous and notable to the eyes, when a womā is cut open then do the bottome vaynes, whych may be very ſkantly perceaued: wherefore they thyncke that theſe necke vaynes ſhoulde be the greater ſtorers of termes.

¶Agayne (ſaye they) we ſe many tymes that after thee woman is conceaued, yet doeth there yſſue termes tyl the thyrd or iiii. yea, ſomtimes the .v. moneth: ẏ which nowe at thys tyme can not proceade oute of the Matrix: for the port or mouth ther of, accordynge to Auctours opynyons, is ſo cloſed after the ſeede cōceaued, that the

poynte

poynt of a nedle can not entre, but by vio-
lence & force: wherfore they conclude that
the termes at this tyme muſt nedes ſpryn-
ge oute of the necke vaynes: & not oute of
the bottome vaynes.

¶ To thoſe I anſwere, that both at this
tyme and at al other times the termes iſ-
ſue onely oute of the bottome vaynes, and
out of ſoch of the necke vaines as ſpreade
theym ſelfe onely wythin the Matrix, as
may be ſene in the fygure. For in ſo moche
as nature dyd create the courſe of termes
for no other cauſe, but onely to be a preaſt
and ready fode at al tymes to the feature
conceaued, to what purpoſe ſhuld the ter-
mes in thee necke vaynes of thee Matrix
ſerue, wher there can neuer be any concep-
tion, nether the ſede ther can remayn. And
as concerninge the yſſuinge of the termes
after conception: I ſaye that the porte of
the Matrix is neuer ſo exactely cloſe, but
that ſoch a lyquid thing as bloud is, may
thryll & coole out of it: yea, al though (as
they ſay) the point of a nedle can not entre
in there at: for ye may ſe, that betwene the
chynes and gynkes of cloſely ioyned bour
des, the poynt of a nedle wyll not eaſelye
entre: yet water or any other liquid thing
may

may passe thzough wythout let: and euen so is it in the matrix.

¶And yet foz all thys it shall not folowe that the sede shoulde passe out thereat, as wel as the bloud: foz the sede is of a moze faste, compacte, and stedfaste substaunce: & besydes thys, be that tyme that the seede hath bene but a daye oz two in the matrix it wexeth yet moze stable & stedfaste by the naturall heate of the place, yea and is cõpassed with a thyn tyme as a tender egge is vnder the shell, wherefoze it wyl not so sone issue out of the matrix, without great iniurye.

¶Here agayne ye shal note the cause why that physitiõs do councel wemen whyche be desyzeous too conceaue and can not foz lubzycytie, moysteneste, oz waterishenesse of the Matrix (wherby the attractike, and retentike power of the matrix is debilitat and wekened) to take fumes, and vapours vnderneth, oz other medicines at ỹ mouth to dzye the sayd humydities, immediatly after the termes be passed, and not vppon the coming of thẽ: foz yf the woman shuld be conceaued vpon the coming of the said termes, then wold they commixt them selfe wyth

wyth ỹ sede before the sede haue gottē yet any perfect ryme or caule: wherby the sede should become the thynner, & be made fluy, & so to passe forth agayn out of the matrix washed out wyth the termes.

¶But immediatly after that the termes be passed ỹ the sede be conceaued, thē shal it haue sufficiente tyme to gette a stronge rime or caule ouer it before ỹ termes come agayn. And agayn whiles ỹ litle speckes or mouthes of thee Matrix vaynes be yet open after the letting forth of the termes they shall be the more apt to cleaue and to ioyne thē selues wyth the feature by meanes of caules wherein the feature is inuolued and chiefly of Chorion named thee hoope caule, as hath ben sufficiently sayd here before.

¶Yet when the sede hath ben. a. iii. or. iiii. weekes in the wombe, it is not of sufficiēt quantitie to consume into hys nutrimente al the bloud that was wont to resorte into the matrix vaynes: wherfore the fyrste, seconde, yea, and thyrde moneth sometimes, at the womans wont tyme of termes ther issueth & showeth some bloud more or lesse the more in them whyche were wont at other tiines to haue aboundaunce of thē. &c

And

And ye shall note that when the chylde is conceaued, & that the caule Chorion is fastened & basted to the Matrix by the vaynes thereof, yet do not al the vaynes of the matrix attayne to the sayd Chorion: but a certayne so far as Chorion doth reach: howbeit ỹ larger ỹ Chorion groweth with ỹ child the mo vaynes doth he couer: wherfore frō those vaynes that be not yet affyxed vnto Chorion do the termes flowe at this tyme But when the child beginneth ones to come to a greater perfectiō & groweth, then is al the terme bloud reserued in the Matrix, as lyttle ynough to satisfye the chyld and then also part thereof mounteth vp into the brestes & becometh mylke as shalbe sayd here after.

¶ Yet agayne to confyrme myne opinion, that the Termes do onely issue oute of the vaute of the matrix: ye shall vnderstande, that at sundry tymes I haue had two dyuers wemen in cure thone in London and thother in Paris: of which thone by a fal frō her horse, the other by a violent thrust and squat on the buttockes vpō the harde stones in the strete, beynge both neare the tyme of theyr purgatiō, chaūced also both of them into one maner of disease, (that is to say) immediatly here vpon, theyr Ter-

mes dyd yſſue. And ſo continued dayely to the one of them the ſpace of halfe a yeare, & to the other an hole yeare: ſo that after that tyme the termes ſtayed agayne, & iſſued no moze dayely as before, but ones in iiii. wekes at what time they voided great lũpes, kakes, oz cloddes of bloud, cõgeled togeather euen lyke the lyuer of a beaſte: And in the meane tyme, betwene eche voy ding of theſe lumpes of bloud, (whych as I haue ſayde came to paſſe ones in fowze wekes) euerye daye continually appeared and yſſued ther whyte flowzes (as they na med it.)

¶ Now to declare, the particular occaſi ons of this maner of voydynge of the ter mes, ye ſhal vnderſtande, that by the fozce of the fall and ſquat, the Matrix vaynes brake: & that ſo moch the moze promptlye the fuller that they were of bloud, & that nerer theyr tyme of purgation: vpõ which bracke, the bloud dayly iſſued afterward wherby the naturall vigeur, and kynde heate of the matrix, by lytle and lyttle de creaſed and decayed, frygidite and colde neſſe ſucceded. By whych occaſion alſo the mouth oz pozte of the Matrix, wexed thee moze contract and narower: foz colde clo ſeth, knytteth & congeleth, hereto helping

nor

not a lyttle the great vse of colde bynding medicines which eche of thē dyd apply to this place at the symple counsell of ignoraunt persons.

¶ The port then of the matrix by this occasion closed & contracted, the bloud wōt alwaies dayly to procede, remaineth within the matrix, wher as fast as it droppeth and cooleth oute of thee vaynes, it congeleth and cludderеth togeather lyke as ye may se, that when a man is let bloud in a basyn or other vessell, and that the bloud, standeth styl in it, ỹ space of. v. or. vi. houres it wyll be concrete & congyled in a cludder lyke a lyuer, the watery parte thereof swymminge and flyttyng, aboue vpon the face of it: and euē so is it of the bloud congyled in the matrix: so that when there is so moch of thys congyled bloud conceaued together in the sayd Matrix, that it can not conteyne it any lenger, then vyolently and parforce, it yssueth out together, with far greater parell, daunger, and dolour to the woman, the though she laboured with a chylde.

¶ The whyte flowres that yssued, during the time that this bloud gathered in ỹ matrix, was (no doubte) the verye watery sthe part, that fleted when the bloud congyled:

for that water cā neuer congele as ȳ bloud doth, wherfore euerye daye as faste as the bloud dyd congele in the matrix, so fast also dyd the water seperate it selfe from the bloud, and so yssued.

¶ Notwithstanding I am not ignorannt that the very white flowres in dede do proceade from the seede cariars, into the angles or corners of the matrix, and so from thence outwarde: the whyche dysease also mē haue many tymes. And it cometh ether of the aboundaūce of fleugme in the body: or of the corruption and euyl qualite mixed in the seede. &c.

¶ These examples as I suppose maye be sufficient euidēces, that the termes spring alwayes from within the matrix, and not from any part of the necke therof. Item I haue sene dyuers other wemen, in whome theyr termes haue stayed, the space of. vi. viii. &. x. wekes: where wyth theyr bellies haue encreased and wexed bygger, so that they haue thought them selfes to be with chyld. Not withstandyng, at the last haue voided soch like lūpes of bloud, as I haue spoken of here before not wythout greate parel & daunger to them in the voydynge: where withal theyr bellyes haue relāxed and decreased agayne. And thus I make

an

an ende to talke any moze of the nature & courſe of the termes, & now wil I declare ſomewhat of the conueyaunce and courſe of the mylke into the womans bꝛeſtes: foꝛ there is greate affynytie, communyte, and familyaritie betwene the matrix and the bꝛeſtes, whych naturally do perceaue and fele anon, when the matrix hath cõceaued, and then begyn they to bꝛue and to make ready theyꝛ parte, agaynſt the tyme that ꝑ matrix hath all done her parte, that is agaynſt the chyld be bozne: the mylke whyche cometh to the bꝛeſtes, is engendered of the Termes (accoꝛdinge too mooſte mens oppynyons.)

¶ But to knoꝛs which way the ſayd termes ſhoulde attayne from thee Matrix to the bꝛeſtes, ye ſhal underſtand, that the vppermoſt & greateſt vayne of the ſeconde diuiſiõ ſpokẽ of in the xiii. chap. where it attaineth the hoocle bone, ready to paſſe out of the holoneſſe of the belly into the thigh, befoꝛe that it perſe the vell called Peritoneũ, it ſendeth foꝛth a notable vaine bꝛaunche, whych from hence mounteth vpward alonge the belly betwene the ryght muſkle and the ouerthwart, tyll it come a little aboue the nauell: where the extreme oꝛ vpper ende thereof deuydeth it ſelfe in ma

nyfolde lyttle braunches, metyng and entermyngling them selues, with the extreme lyttle braunches or slyppes of another lyke payne, descendinge from thee vppermost chestbone downe alonge the insyde of the chest, and the insyde of the vpper part of the bellye: vntyll it mete wyth the fore sayd mountynge payne, a lyttle aboue the nauell.

¶ And ye shal note ỳ this payne brauche proceadinge frō Vena caua at the hyghest chestbone downeward along the inner side of the chest or brest, by the waye as it passeth, it yeldeth certayne lyttle slyppes and smal braunches of it self betwene the rybbes into the brestes, wherfore the cōsent of al autours is, that by the meanes of these descending payne brauches at both sydes of the body. And the other ascending payn braunches on both sydes of the belly, ther shuld be great communitie and felowshyp betwene the brestes in women, and the matrix or the wombe.

¶ For doutlesse by commune experience ye may se that when the tyme of conceptiō in women is, and that by this meanes the termes be stopped, then as the termes doo deminish and ware lesse, so doth the milke in the brestes encrease, & ware euery daye

more

more & more, as who myght ſay: that the ſuperfluite of bloud wonte at other tymes to voyde in ỹ name of termes, now at this tyme by the prudencie and prouiſiõ of Nature is retayned as no ſuperfluyte, but rather a neceſſary humour, reuerted & deſtynate another way, that is to ſaye: ſent frõ the vaynes of the matrix part thereof vpward by the forenamed aſcendinge vayne braunches, at theyr handes agayne receaued and naturallye attracted by the other deſcending breſt vaynes, thorough whõ it is caried into the breſtes, wher by new natural circulatiõs it is digeſted into white mylke, beyng before red bloud: ready now prepared to nouriſhe the child whẽ nature ſhal ſende it into the worlde.

¶ Agayne ſo longe as the womã geueth ſucke to the chyld, & hath flooze of mylcke in her breſtes, her termes be of very lyttle or no quãtite: theſe be euidences that ther ſhulde be greate familiaritie betwene the matrix and the breſtes, for ſo moch as the ebbynge of the one is the flowynge of thee other: wherfore phiſitiõs ſometymes, whẽ the flowres yſſue more vehementlye then neadeth, they ſet boring glaſſes vnder the breſtes, meaninge therby to reuert and returne vpward, ỹ matter enclyned to moch

downward: the whych practise how moch it preuayleth I wyl not here dyspute. Yet in this matter to discusse the verye verytè as neare as reason and the knowledge of anathome wyll geue leue, ye shall not vnderstande my sayinges that I shuld meane that alwayes when the termes stop beneth by any colde, thought, or other occasions, by and by the same bloud to stye and mount vp vnto the brestes & there to become mylke for the contrary hereof is dayely sene: for moost cõmunely they in whom these termes do stop, for anye other cause, then conception, the superfluous bloud retayned in the bodye, & in the vaynes wandring, causeth to the party great hedache, taketh away theyr stomack, & engendreth dyuers other inconueniences: nether in the meane whyle is there any thing the more mylke in the brestes. ¶

¶ Wherfore ye maye well saye that the cause of plẽty of milke in ỹ womãs brestes in tyme of her being w̃ child & moch more afterward, commeth chiefly by a priuy naturall inclination, whereby it is geuen vnto the brestes at ỹ tyme more then at anye other to drawe vnto it self greater aboundance of bloud conuertynge and alteringe the same by the propertie of the place into

conuenient mylke.

¶ It is not a sufficiēt cause to replenish ẏ brest, ẏ termes to be by any occasiō stopped beneth, but ther must also concurre the attractiue powre inset in ẏ brestes to drawe ẏ sayd bloud (matter at other times of the termes) wout which attractiō, be ẏ termes neuer so longe stopped, yet shal ẏ brestes be nothinge the fuller: yf it chaūce ẏ this attractiue power halte, or be not able to attracte sufficient matter to make mylke vpon for the infant, thē phisicions ar wont to helpe the debylyte of nature, with cupping glasses set vpon or vnder the brestes or els with gentyl attractiue emplasters applyed to the same places.

¶ And although that into the brestes do resorte greate store of other vaynes, some descending frō the vaines of the shulders, and other some frō the vaynes passinge by the armeholes into the armes & handes, the which in moyson & notable biggenesse moch surmoūt the quantite of ẏ aboue named descendinge brest vaynes, as it maye appere euydently in many wemen whych haue these vaynes appering in the superficye of theyr brestes immediatly vnder ẏ skyn, very conspicuous and syghtfull, yet not withstandinge it is thought by strōge

coniectures

coniectures that the milke in the breastes, shulde be engendred only vppon the blould mountinge from the aforesayde ascending matrix vaynes and not vpō the blould contayned in the other vaynes, howe conspycuous so euer they be: so that the blould in them cōprehended serueth only to the nourishemente of the substaunce of the breastes them selfes, & not to the mayntenaunce of mylcke.

¶ To declare here curiously the maner that nature vseth in circulatyng of the attracted blould, wherby alteration is made from one colour to another, wold requyre a longer processe, the which for breuite we wyl omyt at thys tyme: wyth many other problemes, doubtes & difficulties concerning the same. And so we make an ende of thys fyrst Boke.

¶ The declaration by letters of the fygures folowyng, wherein be ſet forth to the eye euery part in woman mencioned in thys Boke before.

¶ Of the fyrſt fygure.

In the fyrſt fygure, is ſet forth ſo moch of a mās body as may be ſufficient to ſhow the forme of thee kell called Peritoneum: ſpoken of in the. iiii. Chapter. Whoſe compaſſe is here noted wyth A. B. C. D.

¶ A. A. noteth the gryſtell, nether ende or poynt of the breſt plate, in the pyt or pitch of the breſt agaynſt the ſtomacke.

¶ E. E. is a lyne deſcendyng vpon Peritoneū from the ſayde gryſtle, downe to the myddle ioynt of the ſhare boue.

¶ F. is the nauell.

¶ G. ſygnifieth the ſede veſſels of the lefte ſyde in men deſcendynge out of the amplytude of the belye.

¶ H. is the ryght ſeede veſſell: but thys G. and H. hath no place in the women.

¶ I. ſygnyfieth the aſcendinge vayne and artyre mencyoned in the laſt chap. ¶ K. the deſcendyng breſt vaynes & artyres ſpoken

of

of in the ſame Chapt. as for other letters that be in this figure I wyl make no further declaration of them, for becauſe they ſerue nothing to this preſent purpoſe.

¶ The ſeconde fygure.

IN the ſecond fygure, ye muſt ymagyne that Peritoneum is deuyded in. iiii. partes wherof the lappes or flappes be turned vp, and ſygned wyth A. B. C. D. ſo that in this fygure may be ſene theſe partes folowynge. ¶ Fyrſt E. the nauell as in the fyrſt fygure. ¶ F. is the vayne that aſcendeth from the nauell vp to thee lyuer ſpoken of in the. xiiii. chap. ¶ G. is the entraſſe of the ſayd vayne in the ryfte of the lyuer. ¶ H. H. ſygnifieth the back part of the lyuer. ¶ I. is nothing to our pourpoſe. ¶ K. ſignifieth the right artyre deſcendyng frō the nauell of the chylde alonge the ſyde of the bladder to the greate mayſter artyre ſpoken of in the. xiii. chap. ¶ L. is the lefte artyre hauinge lyke proceſſe. ¶ M. is the vrine vayne in childzen beinge in the mothers belly: mēcioned in the. xiii. cha. ¶ N. the bottome or found of the vryne bladder ¶ O. peritoneum faſtened to the bladder. ¶ P. p. the forepart of the ſtomacke wyth many vayne braunches & artyre branches

thereto

therto reſoꝛtyng. ¶Q.Q.Q.Q. the kel cal led Omentum in latyn. In whō as ye may ſe be many ſtreines of vaines & artyꝛes en terlarded plentyfully with fat. ¶R.S.T. be nothing to this purpoſe. ¶Here ye ſhal be aduertyſed that although theſe.ii.fyꝛſt fygures be made pꝛincipally foꝛ ỹ mā, yet may they ſerue as wel to erpꝛeſſe the woman: foꝛ the man and woman differ in nothyng but in the pꝛyuie partes.

¶The thyꝛde fygure.

THe third figure, (Peritoneū, & Omentū with al ỹ guts takē awaye) ſheweth the maner how the matrix lyeth at ỹ fiꝛſt ſight oꝛ opening of a woman: & lykewiſe the bladder. ¶A.B.C.D. is ỹ foldinge vp to the ſydes of Peritoneum. ¶E.E.F.F. and G.G. do ſygnyfie the meſenterium, In englyſh (I trowe) named the ſwete bꝛead: to whom al the length of the guttes were vnite, and knyt. ¶H.H. and I. be not to our entent. ¶K. is the foundament gutte, cut & deuyded frō the reſte of the guttes, & knyt at the ende wyth a ſtringe. ¶L. ſignifieth the foꝛepart of the body of the matrix. ¶M the womans right ſtone. ¶N. the left, the whych two ſtones be not yet ſo ſyghtfull as in the figure folowing becauſe that as yet

yet,here it is ſhadowed & couered wyth a thyn ryme or ſkyn,whych taking hys begynning of Peritonēū,paſſeth ouer the forefface of the.ii.ſtones,not cleauing vnto thē frō whence yet it goeth to the ſede cariers & ſteyeth or bindeth thē by the waye vnto the loynes. ¶ O.O.O.O. noteth a thyn ryme or thin ſkin,which beyng engendred of Peritoneū: proceedeth on eche ſyde from the loynes along,like a ſpyders webbe by the way couering the ſtones, & ſede bringars. The ſede cariers,& the matrix to whom it ſhapeth another coate or couer,the ryghte ſyde & the lefte,me'yng togeather: and by thys ſkyn the Matrix is bounde and faſtened to the loynes and backebone. ¶ R.S. ſhoweth the forefface,or region,of the neck of the Matrix, coueted and hyd vnder the forefayde ſkynne:and it ſemeth wrincled, and ryueled euen as the necke of the Matrix is vnderneth it,alwayes,yf it be not ſtretched forthe wyth the hande. ¶ T. the bladder tourned downewarde, becauſe ye moughte the more clearelye perceaue and ſee the forepart of the ſayde Matrix:for yf the bladder ſtode in hys place & vpryght, then the bottome of the bladder wher this letter T.is,ſhuld ſtand as hygh as L. ¶ V. ſygnifyeth the nauell deuyded frō the reſt

of the belly, and cleauyng here styll to the nauell vryne vayne marked with. Y. & the two nauel artyres, sygned with Z. and. &. ¶ X. is a stub or piece of the nauell vayne whych stycketh to the lyuer.

¶ The fowrthe fygure.

IN the. iiii. fygure is fyrste set forth one of the womans brestes in example for them both: the skyn being flayne & takē away. ¶ A. A. notyfieth the vaines which be deryuyed hyther to thee brestes from the shulder vaines. ¶ B. signifieth the vaynes attayning to the brestes frō the arme hole vaynes. ¶ C. is the chiefe and principall parte or body of the breste. ¶ D. D. are the kernelles, & fatnesse clustered, and gathered together in the sayd chief part of ẏ brestes sygned with. G. ¶ Now in the rest of this fygure: these. iiii. letters. E. F. G. H. do declare the Peritoneū tourned vp to the sydes of the belly. ¶ I. K. be partes and portions of the brest vaynes & artyres descending frō vnder the chest, to the belly as is said in ẏ. xiiii. cap. ¶ L. is ẏ back or bossing side of the liuer. ¶ M. the holowe, caue, or vautie part of the liuer. ¶ N. a pece of the nauel vayne cut of frō the rest. ¶ O. a stub

of

of Vena porta. ℂ P. the great maister vayne called Vena caua. ℂ Q. the great artire named in latyn Arteria magna: of these. ii. the maister vayne and Artyre is spoken in the ix. ca. ℂ R. a stump of thartyres whych entre into the stomacke, lyuer, splene, kell, & guts. ℂ S. a stubbe of ꝑ vayne whych entereth into ꝑ fat tyme or skyn of the kydnes whereof there is no mẽtiõ in this boke as seruing little to our purpose. ℂ T. ꝑ righte vayn & artire cõueying ꝑ watery part of ꝑ bloud frõ the great vaine & artire into the right kidney of ꝑ syde. ℂ V. ꝑ left vayne & artire cõueying likewise ꝑ watery part of the bloud to ꝑ left kidney: of these is spokẽ in ꝑ. xii. chap. ℂ X. nothing to our purpose. ℂ Y. the ryghte kydney. ℂ Z. the lefte kydneye. ℂ a. a. the vryne vaynes or conduytes deriued from the ryght kydney downe along to the hinder face, & right syde of the bladder: but here in this figure it is brokẽ or cut of before ꝑ it attayne to the bladder, for because ꝑ the bladder is turned backeward: partely ꝑ the hynder part thereof & the entraunce of thꝑyne vaynes there about, myght be ꝑ better perceyued: & partely agayne, ꝑ the necke of the matrix might be the more in syght: the portiõ of thys vryne vayne ꝑ entreth & remayneth to the

bladder

bladder is noted with .b. ¶ c.c. the lefte vryne vayne: of theſe is entreated in the .xii chap. ¶ d.d. the ſede bringer vayne of the righte ſide. ¶ e. the ſede bringer vayne on the left ſyde. ¶ f. the begiming of the two ſede artyres. ¶ g. the ryghte ſeede artyre. ¶ h. the left ſeede artyre: the ſede vaynes, and artyres be ſpoken of in the .ix. chap. ¶ i.k.l. the forefrunt or forepart of the bottome of the Matrix: for all this compaſſe i.k.l. is called the founde or bottome of the wõbe: ſo that .i. ſignifieth the ryght angle and .k. the left angle of the Matrix. .l. the place wher about ſtãdeth the port or gate of the wombe, and where the necke of the Matrix begynneth. ¶ m. ſygnyfyeth the ryght inteſtyne or foundamente gutte, cut and deuyded from the reſt of the guttes: & knyt here with a ſtringe: for ye ſhal vnder ſtande that yf all the guttes were remaynynge ſtyll in the fygure, then wolde they kepe frõ your eyes the ſyght of the greate vayne and artyre, the ſeede bringers, thee kydneis, the ſtones: and diuers other thinges, whyche nowe may be ſene in this fygure: but thee Matrix lyeth euer more aboue, vpon the guttes: and afore the Matrix agayne to the bellye warde, the bladder: ſo that all the pety veſſels whych re-

ſoꝛte to them bothe, come from vnderneth oꝛ from behynde the guttes.

Now hereafter foꝛ bꝛeuite, & foꝛ becauſe that, ỹ the which ſhalbe ſpoken of the veſſels on the right ſyde, is alſo to be vnderſtanded of the ſame on the left: I wyl note with letters onely the veſſels of the right ſyde. ¶n. the bottome vaynes of the matrix, cap. xi. and cap. xiii. ¶o. the metynge and coniunction of the ſede bꝛinger vayne and artyꝛe, and the begynnynge of the bꝛaded bodye. chapter. ix. ¶p. the bꝛoder ende of the bꝛaded body where it emplanteth it ſelfe in the ſtone. chapter. ix. ¶q. nothynge to our pourpoſe. ¶r. the foꝛeparte of thee ryghte ſtone. ¶ſ. thee head oꝛ thee begynnynge of the ſeede cariar into thee ryghte angle of the Matrix. ¶t. t. thee compaſſe oꝛ cyꝛcuyte of the woꝛmye bodye. chap. xi. ¶u. the pꝛogreſſe oꝛ dyꝛyuation of the ſede caryar in to thee ryghte coygne oꝛ angle of the wombe. chapter. xi. ¶x. the necke of the matrix: oꝛ the wombe paſſage. chap. v. ¶y. the necke vaynes of the matrix, chap. xiii. ¶α. is a vayne whych cometh to the bladder frō the necke vaynes of the wōbe ca. xiii. ¶α, β. ſygnifyeth the hynder face of the bladder: tourned on the one ſyde as is ſayd befoꝛe. ¶γ. the muſcle of the bladder

cap

ca.xii. ¶ K. here in this place ẏ neck of the bladder doth entre and groweth to ẏ neck or priuy passage of the wombe. ¶ As for e. nedeth no declaration. ¶ N. noteth the roote & the beginninge of the ascending matrix vaynes whom in the fyrst fygure ye maye se more euydently, how it styeth vp along the belly to and aboue the nauell. chap. xv

¶ The. v. fygure.

THis. v. fygure is pourtrahed after ẏ quycke, bothe in length, & bredth, according to the length & bredth of the matrix of a womā which was cut opē for the same purpose by phisitiōs But ye must vnderstand that here ẏ founde or body of ẏ wombe or matrix is deuyded in ẏ myddes: the forepart of the which, is turned vp, for because that ye maye the better perceaue ẏ cauite of the matrix signed, the vppermost with. A. A. C. The nethermoste halfe wyth B. B. D. ¶ Item. C. in the vppermost halfe & D. in the nethermost halfe show the seame or lyne spokē of. cap. vi. ¶ E. E. both in the vpper & also in the nether betokē ẏ crassenes or thickenesse of ẏ inner coate, wall or skyn of the matrix in wemen not beinge wͭ chyld, through the contraction thereof as ye shall farther rede in the sayd. vi. chapt. ¶ F. F. the propendynge or heldynge parte

of the seme in the matrix spoken of.cha.vi ¶G.G.is the porte,oryfyce,or gate of thee wombe.¶H.H.is the second & vtter coate of the matrix geuen to it from Peritoneum ¶I.I.on both sydes of the necke of the matrix,do sygnifye,part of the kel called Peritoneū,sticking yet to the sydes of the matrix & the necke thereof.¶K.K.is the place where the matrix is fastened to the vpper part of the priuy passage.ca.vii.¶L.signifieth the stub of ẏ bladders necke,wher it entreth into ẏ forepart of ẏ priuy passage.

¶ The.vi.figure.

IN this present figure,is set forth the matrix in lesse fourme,& here the neck of ẏ matrix or priuy passage is folded vp in soche wyse, that ye may beholde the matrix porte or gate spoken of. Chap.vii. ¶A.the founde of thee matrix. ¶B.B.thee priuie passage folded vp.¶C.the kernelly snowte of the matrix porte wherein is the clyfte in the myddes sygned with.D.chap vii.¶E.E. be the thyn parchement skynny caules, whereby the matrix is vnyte and knyt to the sydes of the belly by Peritoneū ¶F.the lefte stone.¶G.I.a piece of the sede bringers.¶H.the bottome matrix vaynes ¶K.the wormy body. ¶L.signifieth the holonesse of the bladder:for in this figure the

the bladder is cut open so that ye may se ẏ two speckes & hooles of the bladder wher in do entre the.ii. vryne vaynes from eche kydney.chap.xii. signed with M.¶N.sygnifieth the peces or endes of the vrine vaynes cut of from the reste.

¶ The.vii.fygure.

THe. vii. fygure declareth in a lyttle fourme, the fashiō of the hole matrix, as it standeth hole togeather: wyth the stones, & bottome vaynes on eche syde of it.¶B.is the matrix.ξ.o.ρ.ϖ.is the necke of the matrix.¶ϖ.the hole where the vryne bladder doeth entre.¶ S.the necke vaynes of the matrix.¶The other letters nede no forther declaration, for so moche as the partes therby signified, be already sufficiently declared here before.

¶ Of the.viii.ix,x,and,xi,fygure,

THese fowre figures folowinge showe the maner howe the chylde is lapped in his.iii.wrappers & how it lieth in the mothers belly. In the first of these fygures the matrix or wombe of the mother is cut croswyse, & the sydes thereof noted with A.B.C.D.turned vp: so that ye maye sensably loke in & perceaue how the child

wythin hys thre caules lieth in the wõbe ¶F. is the Chorion. ¶G.G. is the ſeconde wrapper: the fyrſt can not here be ſene, cha xiiii. ¶H. is the necke of the matrix. ¶In the nynth fygure the chyld wythin al his wrappers, is to be ſeene, cleare oute of the matrix: ſo that. K. ſygnifieth the thyrde, & vtter wrapper named Chorion. ¶L.L. the ſecond wrapper, which is ſo cleare & thin and ſo lykewyſe the fyrſte vnder it that a man may confuſely ſee the chyld thrõughe them. ¶In the. x. fygure, the thyrd wrapper Chorion, & the ſecond be deuyded from the fyrſt ſo that here the childe is cõtayned onely in the fyrſt caule, called Amneos ¶M.M. the fyrſte caule. ¶N. the companye of vaynes and artires deriuied from Chorion to the chyldes nauel. ¶O.O. the inner ſyde of the ſecond caule. ¶P.P. the backe ſyde thereof: ¶Q. the Chorion: ¶In the. xi and laſt fygure, the chylde is cleared from all his wrappers, & lyeth after thee verye maner as it is ſytuate in the mothers wõbe (beyng a man chylde) with the head towardes the ryghte angle or cozner of thee matrix, & the legges a croſſe: Al beit there be that do deſcribe the lyinge of the chyld after another ſorte, but to be ſhort, they ar lyers. ¶S. here doeth ſygnyfy the roope of

vaynes

vaynes & artires that paſſe in great lēgth from Chorion, to the childes nauel: on the which ſomtymes ther be found as it were knots, or knobs, accoꝛding to whoſe numbꝛe, many fonde mydwyfes doo pꝛopheeye the numbꝛe of the chyldꝛen that the traue lynge woman ſhall haue in tyme to come: Item ſometymes thys ſayd roope of vaynes and artires cometh about the childes necke, and then they ſaye it poꝛtendeth to it in tyme to come to hanging: the whych be but ſuperſticious tales and lyes.

FINIS.

Of the tyme of byrth, and which is called naturall or vnnaturall. Capit. I.

IN the fyrste boke we haue sufficiētly set forth and described the maner, sytuation, & forme of thee Matrix, wherein man is conceaued: with diuers other matters appending, and concerning the better vnderstādyng of the same. And nowe here in thys second Boke we wyl declare, the maner of the quytinge and delyueraūce of the infant out of the mothers wōbe: wyth other thynges therto apartayning, And fyrst here in this chapter we wyll declare thee tokens and sygnes whereby ye maye perceaue whether the time of labour be neare or not: for when the houre of labour approcheth neare, these sygnes folowynge, euermore proceade & come be-

Tokens to know when the tyme of delyueraūce is neare

before.

¶ Fyrste certayne dolours & paynes begyn to growe aboute thee guttes, the nauell, and in the raynes of thee backe, & lykewyse about the thighs and the other places beyng neare to the priuy partes, which likewise thē beginneth to swell and to burne & to expell humoures, so that it geueth playne & euydent token that the labour is neare.

¶ But ye shal note that there is two maner of byrthes: the one called natural, the other not naturall. Natural byrth is when the chyld is borne bothe in due season and also in due fashion. The due season is most commonly after the .ix. moneth or about fortye wekes after the conception, although some be deliuered somtimes in the .vii. moneth, and the child proueth very wel. But soch as ar borne in the eyghte moneth, other they be dead

Two sortes of delyuerance.

dead before the byrth, or els lyue not longe after.

The due fashion of byrth.

¶ The due fashion of birth is this, fyrst the head cõmeth forward, then folowth the nycke & shoulders, the armes with the handes lyinge close to the body toward the fete, the face and forepart of the chyld beynge towardes the face & forepart of the mother, as it appeareth in the fyrste of the byrth fygures. For as hath ben sayd already in the first boke, before the tyme of delyueraunce, the childe lyeth in the mothers wõbe, the head vpward, and the fete downewarde: but when it shulde be delyuered: it is turned clene cõtrary, the head downward, the fete vpward, & the face towardes the mothers belly, and that yf the byrth be naturall. Another thyng also is this, that yf the byrth be naturall, thee delyueraunce is easye wythoute longe taryinge or lokinge

kynge for it.

¶ The byrth not naturall is, when thee mother is delyuered before her tyme, or oute of due season, or after any other fasshion then is here specyfyed before: as when bothe legges proceade first, or one alone, with both the handes vp, or both downe, other elles the one vp and the other downe: and dyuers otherwyse, as shal be hereafter more clerely declared.

Of byrth not natural

¶ Of easye and vneasy, difficull, or dolourous deliueraunce, and the causes of it: wyth the sygnes howe to know and foresee the same.
Capit. ii.

VEry many be the parelles, daungeours, and thrōges, whych chaunce to women in theyr labour which also ensue and come in dyuers wayes, & for

Manye parels chāsinge to wemē in theyr labour.

for dyuers cauſes, ſoche as I ſhall here declare.

¶ Fyrſt when the woman that laboreth is conceaued ouer yonge, as before. xii. or. xv. yeares of age (whiche chanſeth ſomtyme, thoughe not verye often) and that the paſſage be ouer anguſte, ſtreate, or narrowe, other naturallye, or elles for ſome dyſeaſe and infyrmytie, whyche maye happen about that parte, as apoſtumes, puſſhes, pyles, or blyſters, and ſoche other: thorow the whych cauſes nature can not (but wyth greate doloure and payne) open and dylate it ſelfe to the expellynge and delyueraunce of the chylde. And ſomtyme thee beſyde or bladder, or other intralles beynge aboute the matrix or wombe be alſo apoſtumate, & blyſtered, whych beyng grieued, the Matrix or wombe lykewyſe for vicintie or neyghberhed is grieued wyth them

them: and that hindereth greatelye the delyueraunce. Also sometyme in the fundament are hemorrhodes or pylles and other pusshes, chappynges or chynes whyche cause greate payne: also hardnes and difficultye or binding of the belly, whych thinges for the griefe and payne that ensueth of them causeth the womã to haue little power to help her selfe in her labour.

¶ Furthermore yf thee partye be weake and of feble complexion, or of nature very colde, or to yonge, or very aged, or exceading grosse and fat or contrary wyse to spare & leane, or that she neuer had chylde before, or that she be ouer tymorious & fearefull, dyuers, waye warde, or soch one that wyll not be ruled, remouynge her selfe from one place to another: all soche thynges causeth the labor to be mochе more paynefull, cruell & dolorous,

dolorous, then it wold otherwyse be Also ye must vnderstand that generallye the birth of the man is easier then the birth of the female.

¶ Item yf the chyld be of a fuller & greater growthe, than that it maye easely passe that narow passage: or cõtrary wise, yf it be so faynt, weake and tender, that it can not tourne it selfe, or doth it very slowly, or yf the woman haue two chyldren at ones, other elles that it wyth the whyche she laboureth be a monster: as for example, yf it haue but one bodye and two heades, as appereth in the. xvii of the byrth fygures, soch as of late was sene in the dominiõ of werdenbergh.

¶ Agayne when it proceadeth not in due tyme or after due fasshion: as when it cometh forth with both fete or both knees together, or els wyth one foote onelye, or wyth bothe feete

downe-

downewardes and both handes vpwards, other els (the which is most perellous) sidelong, arselõg, or backlonge: other elles (hauinge two at a byrth) both proceade with their fete fyrst, or one wyth his fete and the other wyth hys head: by those & dyuers other wayes thee woman sustayneth greate doloure, payne, and anguyshe.

¶ Item yf the woman suffre aborsement: that is to saye: bringe forth her chyld in the .iiii. or .v. moneth after the conception, whyche is before the due tyme, in thys case it shall be greate payne to her: for so moche as in that time the porte of the wõbe is so firmely & strongely enclosed, that vnneth the point of a nedle may entre in at it.

¶ Also yf the chyld be dead in the mothers belly it is a very perellous thynge, for so moch as it can not be easelye

easely turned, nether can it welde, or helpe it selfe to come forthe, or yf the chylde be sicke or weakened, so that it can not for feblenes helpe it selfe.

To knowe whether the child be dead in the mothers belly

The whych thing maye be foreseene and knowen by these tokens: yf the woman wyth chyld haue ben longe sicke before her laboure, yf she haue ben sore lacked, yf after her conception she haue had dayly and vnwontly her flowers, yf straycht after one moneth vpon the cõception her brestes yelde any mylcke, yf the chylde styre not ne moue at soche tyme as is conuenyente for it: these be argumentes and tokens that it shulde be very weake. By what tokẽs ye shal knowe it is dead, I shall shewe you hereafter.

Parell in the secondyne

¶ Also there is great parell in laboringe, when the secondyne or latter byrthe is ouer fyrme or stronge, and wyll not soone ryue or breake a sunder

a sunder, so that the chyld maye haue hys easy comyng forth. And contrarye wyse, when it is ouer weake, slender or thyn, so that it breaketh a sunder before that the chyld be tourned or apte to yssue forth, for thē the humours whych are collect and gathered togeather about thys secondyne or seconde byrthe, passe awaye sooner then they shoulde do, and the byrth shal lacke his due humidities and moystures, which shuld cause it the easelyer to proceade, and wythe lesse payne.

¶ The byrthe also is hindered by ouermoch colde or ouermoch heate: for in ouermoche colde, thee passage and al other powres of the laborīng womanne be coarcted and made narower then they shoulde other wyse be. Lykewyse ouer moche heate debylyteth, weakeneth and faynteth both the woman and thee chylde, so

Excesse of heat or cold greatly hindereth thee labour.

that neyther of theym in that cale, can well welde or helpe theym ſelfes for fayntnes.

¶And farther yf the woman haue vſed to eate cõmenlye ſoch meate or fruytes, whych doo exiccate or drye, and cõſtrayne or bynd, as medlars, cheſtenuttes: and all ſowre fruytes, as crabbes, chokepers, quinces and ſoch other, wyth ouer moche vſe of vergeus, and ſoche lyke ſowre ſaucces, with rife, myll, and many other thynges, all thys ſhall greatly hynder the byrth.

¶Alſo the vſe of cold bathes after the fyfth moneth folowing the conception, or too bathe in ſoche water where alome is, pyron, or ſalte, or any ſoch thynges which do coarcte and conſtrayne: or yf ſhe haue bene often tymes heauy and mourninge, or yll at eaſe: or yf ſhe haue bene kept ouer hungrye and thurſtye, or haue vſed ouer

ouer moche watche and walkynge: eyther yf she bled a lyttle before her labour thiges of great odour, smel, or sauour, for soche thinges (in many mens opinions) attract & drawe vpwarde the mother or matrix, the whych is great hynderaunce to the byrthe.

Also yf the woman feele payne oneiy in the backe and aboue the nauell & not vnder, it is a signe of hard labour: lykewyse yf she ware wonte in tymes passed to be deliuered with greate payne, is an euydence & lykelyhode of greate labour alwayes in the byrthe.

Tokens of easy delyuerraunce.

Nowe sygnes and tokens of an expedite and easye delyueraunce bee soch as be contrary to all those that haue ben rehearsed before. As for example, when the woman hath bene wonte in tymes passed easelye to be deliuered: and that in her labour she

ſeale but lyttle thronge or dolour, or though ſhe haue greate paynes, yet they remayne not ſtyll in the vpper partes, but deſcend alwayes downe wardes to the nether partes or bottome of the belly.

¶ And to be ſhort in all paynefull and troubleſome labours theſe ſygnes betoken & ſignify good ſpede & lucke in the labor: vnquietnes moch ſtyrring of the chyld in the mothers bellye, all the thronges and paynes tomblyng in the forepart of the bottome of the belly, the woman ſtrong and myghty of nature, ſoch as can well and ſtrongely helpe her ſelfe to the delyueraunce of the byrth. And agayne euyll ſignes be thoſe, when ſhe ſweteth cold ſweat, and that her pulces beate & labour ouer ſore, and that ſhe her ſelfe in the labourynge faynte and ſowne theſe be vnluckie and mortall ſygnes.

Howe

How a woman with chyld shal vse her selfe, and what remedies be for them that haue hard labour. Capit. iii.

TO succour and helpe them that are in soch difficul parell of laboure as we haue spoken of before, ye muste obserue, kepe, & marke those thinges that we shall (by the grace of God) shew you in this chapter folowing.

How the labour may be made more easye.

¶ First the womã with chyld must kepe two dyettes, the one a moneth before her labor, the other in the very labouring: & aboue al thinges she must exchue & forbeare all soch occasiõs whych may hinder the birth to the vttermost of her power the whiche occasiõs we rehersed in the chapter before. But yf ther be any soch thing which can not be auoyded, for so moch as it commeth by nature or by longe continuaunce and custome

in thys case yet ye shall vse some
soch remedies, the which may some
what asswage it, mollify it, or make
it more easye or tollerable, so that it
hinder the byrth so moch the lesse.
¶ But yf it so be, that any infirmite
or disease, swelling, or other apostu
matiō chaunce about the mother or
the priuye part, or about the beslyke
or bladder, as the stone, the strāgury
and soche lyke: the whyche thinges
may cause soch straytnes & coarcta-
tion that vneth greate & horryble
payne, the party can be delyuered or
dyscharged: in these cases it behou-
eth soche thinges to be loked vnto
and cured before the tyme of labour
commeth, by the aduyse of some ex-
perte Surgion.
¶ Also yf the womā be ouermoch
cōstipat, or bound moll communely,
she muste vse the moneth before her
labor soche thinges, the which may
lene-

lenifye, mollifye, dissolue, & loose the belly: as apples fried with sugre taken fasting in the morninge, & after that a draught of pure wyne alone, or els tẽpred wyth the iuyce of swete and very rype apples. Also to eate fygges in the morning fasting, and at nyght, looseth well the bellye. If these profyte not Casia fistula taken. iii or. iiii. dramgs one halfe howre before dyner shall loose the belly wyth out parell.

¶ Agayne in this case she must refrayne frõ al soch thiges as do harden, restrayne, & constipat: as meats browled or rosted, and ryse, hard egges, biefe, chestnuttes, and all sowre fruytes, and soch lyke.

¶ Also yf farther necessytie requyre she maye receaue a clyster, but it muste be verye gentle & easye, made of a pynte of the broath of cheken or other tender flesshe: therto puttynge

Thinges to loose the belly.

so moche course sukre or honye as may make it reasonably swete: and halfe a sponefull of whyte salte: or for the poore wemen maye be made a clyster of a pynt of water wherein hath bene sodde mallowes, or hölyoke, wyth hony and salte, as before. She may vse also some other easye and temperate purgation to mollyfye and lose her wythal: as mercury sodden with flesshe in potage, and dyuers soche other: or els a suppositar tempered wythe sope, larde, or thee yolke of egges.

Wderwyth to comforte ther woman in her labor

¶ And yf it chaūce that (the labour drawinge neare) she waxe faynte or sickelye: then muste ye comforte her wyth good cōfortable meat, drincke holsome & noble electuaries: and in this time must she do al soch things the which can make her apte & sufficient to her labor, & to vse soch thinges the which maye laxe, open, and mollify

mollifye thee nature and passage, so that the byrth may the more freelye proceade: and that chiefly in the yonger women. The elder women for because that, that partes in them be somewhat dryer and harder: therefore they muste vse hoate and moyst thynges, whych haue propertye to lenyfye and sople, and that bothe in meate and drincke, and also in outewarde fomentacions, bathynges, suppositories, and annoyntmentes.

Annoyntmentes to sople.

Annoyntmētes wher wyth ye may sople the pryuye place, be these: hennes grese, duckes grese, goose grese also oyle olyfe, lynesede oyle, or oyle of fenegreke, or the viscosite of holyoke, and soche other: and for drincke lette her vse good rype wyne myxed wyth water: also there muste be a cōsideration in the dyeting of the woman, that she may vse soch thinges the whyche maye moysten her, and not

not make her fatte. Contrary wyſe, lette her auoyde ſoche thynges the whyche ſhoulde exiccate, drye, conſtrayne or coarcte her: and that all the moneth before her labour. But aboute .x. dayes before thee tyme (yf ſhe feele any payne or griefe) let her vſe euerye daye to waſſhe or bathe her with warme water, in the whyche alſo that ſhe tary not ouer longe in bathinge, for weakeninge of her: and therein let her ſtand, ſo that the water come aboue thee nauell a lyttle: and alſo ſeeth in thee water malowes, holyoke, camomell, mercury, maydenhayre, lyneſeede, fenegreke ſede, and ſoche other thynges whyche haue vertue to mollyfye and ſople: and yf it be ſo that for weakeneſſe of thee bodye ſhe maye not endure thys bathynge in warme water, then wythe a ſpounge or other cloth dypped in the foreſayde bath,

Bathes to looſe & gentlye to open the body.

let

let her lokinglye walshe her fete, her thyghes, and her priuye partes, the which thynge shall greatly profyte to her. But in soche time beware ye come not in the cõmen hoat houses, for they wold cause you to be feble & faynt, which were yll in thys case.

¶ And when ye are thus bathed or washed, thẽ shal it be very cõuenient for you to annoynt with the forsaid greses and oyles your backe, bellye, nauell, sydes, and soch places as are neare to the priuie partes. Farthermore it shalbe greatly profitable for her to conuey inward into the priuy parte these forsayd oyles or greses with a sponge or other thyng made for the purpose, she lyinge vpryghte the myddes of her body most hyest, so that it maye the better remayne wythin her, and that chiefly, yf the matrix be drye, other els the partye very leane and spare. Anoyntmẽtes to sople.

It

Swete fumes

¶ It shalbe also very profytable for her to suffume the nether places wyth muske, ambre, gallia muscata whych put on embres yelde a goodly sauoure, by the whych the nether places open theym selfe, and drawe downewarde.

¶ Also as I sayd before, she muste take good hede to her dyet, that she take thinges the whych may cõfort and strengthen the bodye, & adynge not ouermoch of ani thing, & to drinke pleasaũt and wel sauering wine, or other drinke: also moderatelye to exercyse thee bodye in doynge some thyng, styrring, mouing, goinge, or standinge, more then otherwyse she was wonte to do: these thinges further the byrth & make it the easyer: and this is the maner of dyette thee which we aduyse the womã to kepe thee monethe before her laboure or longer.

Ano

¶ Another dyette there is, the whiche she ought to obserue in the tyme of labour: when the stormes & thronges begyn to come on, & the humors which yet hytherto haue remayned aboute the Matrix or mother collected, now begin to flowe forth: & this maner of dyette consysteth in twoo sortes. Fyrste that soche thynges be procured and had in redynes which may cause the byrth or labour to be very easy. Secondly to withstande, defend and to put away so neare as may be the instant & present dolors. And as touching this poynt, it shal be verye profytable for her for thee space of an houre to sytte styll, then (rysyng agayne) to go vp & downe a payre of stayres crying or reachig so loude as she can, so to styrre her selfe.

What is to be done whē the tyme of labor is come.

¶ And also it shalbe very good for a tyme too retayne and kepe in her

breath

breath, for because that thorow that meanes the guttes and intralles be thrust together and depressed downwarde. Also it shalbe verye good to receaue some medycyne too prouoke the byrth, of the which we wyl speake more hereafter.

¶ Nowe when the woman perceaueth the matrix or mother too waxe laxe or loose: and to be dissolued, and that thee humoures yssue forthe in great plentie, thē shall it be mete for her to syt downe leaning backward in maner vpryght. For the whyche purpose in some regiōs (as in Frāce and Germany) the mydwyfes haue stoles for the nonce, which beyng but lowe & not hye from the ground be made so compasse wyse and caue or holowe in the myddes, that that maye be receaued from vnderneth whyche is looked for: and the backe of the stole leanyng backewarde, re-

Of the mydwyfes stole.

ceaueth

reaueth the back of the woman, the fashion of the whych stole is sette in the beginning of the byrth fygures hereafter.

¶ And when the tyme of labour is come, in the same stoole ought to be putte manye clothes or clowtes in the backe of it, the whiche the mydwyfe maye remoue from one syde to another accordinge as necessytye shall requyre. The mydwyfe her selfe shall syt before the labouringe woman, and shall dylygentelye obserue and wayte, howe moche, and after what meanes the chylde styreth it selfe: also shal wyth her handes fyrste annoynted wyth the oyle of almondes, or thee oyle of whyte lylies rule and directe euery thinge as shall seme beste. Also the mydwyfe muste enstructe and comforte the partye, not onely refreshyng her with good meate & drincke, but also wyth

The mydde wyfe muste geue cōfortable wordes to thee partye trauelynge.

wyth swete woordes, geuynge her good hope of a spedeful deliueraūce encouraging & enstomaking her to patience and tolleraunce, byddinge her to holde in her breath so moche as she maye, also streking gentillye wyth her hādes her belly aboue the nauell, for that helpeth too depresse the byrth downewarde,

¶ But and yf the woman be any thynge grosse, fat, or fleshye, it shall be beste for her to lye grouelyng, for by that meanes the matrix is thrust and depressed downeward, annoyntyng also the preuy partes with the oyle of whyte lyllies. And yf necessite requyre it, let not thee mydwyfe be afrayde ne ashamed too handle thee places and to relaxe and loose thee straytes, (for so moche as shall lye in her,) for that shall helpe well to the more expedite and quycke laboure.

¶ But

¶But thys must the mydwyfe aboue all thynges take heede of that she cõpell not the woman to labour, before the byrth come forward, and shewit self. For before that tyme all labour is in bayne, labour as moch as ye lyste. And in thys case manye tymes it commeth to passe that the partie hathe labored so sore before ỹ tyme, that whẽ she should labour in dede, her myght & strength is spent before in bayne, so that she is not now able to helpe her selfe, and that is a perylous case.

To labour moch before the due time, doeth but feble ỹ woman & nothing profyte

¶Furthermore when thee secondyne or seconde byrth (in the whych the byrth is wrapped and cõteyned) doeth ones appeare, then maye ye knowe that the laboure is at hande wherefore yf thee same secondyne breake not of hys owne kynd, it shal be thee mydwyfes parte and offyce, with her nayles easely & gentely to

breake it, and rent it, or yf that may not conueniently be done, then raise vp betwene youre fyngers a pece of it, & cut it of wyth a payre of sheres, or a sharp knyfe, but so that ye hurt not the byrthe wyth the cutte: thys done, by and by ensueth consequentlye the flux and flowe of humoures: of the which I spake before, & then nexte foloweth immedyatelye the byrth.

¶But yf it so chaunce that the secõdyne shoulde be cut by the mydwyfe and all the watery parte yssued and spente before due tyme and necessyte shoulde requyre it, so that the pryuie passage be left excicate and drye, the byrth not yet appearing, & by thys meanes the labour shuld be hyndered and letted. In thys case ye shall annoynte and mollifye that preuye passage wyth the oyle of whyte lylies, or some of the greses spoken of before

before, fyrste warmed and so con-
nayed into thee preuye partes, thee
which thinges wyll cause the waye
to be slypperye, sople, & easye for the
byrth to passe. But chiefiye in these
difficulties shuld profyte the whyte
of an egge together wyth the yolke
powred into that same place, which
shoulde cause it to be moost slyppery
and slydynge, and supply the roome
of thee naturall humydytyes spente
before.

¶ And yf it be so, that the byrth be of a greate groweth, and the heade stycke in the commynge forth, then muste the myddewyfe helpe all that she maye, with her handes fyrst annoynted wyth some oyle openynge and enlargynge the waye, that the yssue maye be thee frear: lykewyse muste be done yf she bare twoo chyldren at once. And al this is spokē of the naturall byrth when that fyrste

The heade procedinge first.

proceadeth the heade, & then the reſt of the bodye ordinately, as ye maye ſee in the fyrſte of the byrth fygures folowinge.

¶ ii. But when the byrth cometh not naturally, then muſt the middewyfe do al her diligence and payne, yf it maye be poſſible, to tourne thee byrth tenderly wyth her annoynted handes, ſo that it may be reduced agayne to a natural byrth, as for example: Sometyme it chaunſeth the chylde to come the legges and both armes and handes downe warde, cloſe to the ſydes fyrſt forth, as appeareth in the ſeconde of the byrthe fygures: in thys caſe the mydwyfe muſte do all her payne wyth tender handelynge and annoyntynge too receaue forth the chylde, the legges beynge ſtyl cloſe togeather, and the handes lykewyſe remayninge, as appereth in the ſaid. ii. figure. How be it,

the legges & both handes downe proceadinge fyrſt

be it, it were farre better (yf it maye be done by anye possyble wayes or meanes) that the mydwyfe shoulde tourne these legges, commyng fyrst forth bpwardes agayne by the bellywarde, so that the heade myghte descende downewarde by the backe parte of thee wombe: for then naturallye agayne and wythoute parell, as the fyrste myghte it proceade and come forth.

¶ iii. Agayne sometyme the byrth cometh forth wyth both legges and fete fyrst, the handes being lifted bp aboue the head of the child, & this is the parellous maner of byrthe that is: as apereth in the.iii. of the byrth figures. And here must the mydwife do what she maye to turne the birth (yf it may be possible) to the fyrst fygure: & yf it wyll not be, must reduce the handes of it downe to the sydes, and so to redure it into the.ii. figure.

The thyrde of the byrth fygures.

But yf thys also wyl not be: thē receaue the feete as they come forthe, and bind thē with some fayre linnen cloth, and so tenderly and very softe lye lose out the byrth tyl all be come forth, and thys is verye ieopardous labour.

The.iiii.fygure,

¶ iiii. Also sometyme the byrth cōmeth forward with one foote onely, the other beynge lefte vpwarde, as appeareth in the.iiii.fygure. And in thys case it behoueth thee labouryngе woman to laye her vpryghte vppon her backe, holdynge vp her thyghes and belly, so that her head be the lower part of her bodye: then let the mydwyfe wyth her hande returne in agayne the foote that commeth oute fyrste in as tender maner as maye be, and warne thee woman that laboureth to styrre & moue her selfe, so that by thee mouynge and styrrynge the byrth maye be turned the

the head downward, & so to make a natural byrth of it, & then to set thee woman in the stole agayne, & to doo as ye dyd in the fyrst figure: but yf it be so that not withstanding the mothers styrringe & mouinge the birth do not turne: then must the mydwife with her hand softely fetche out the other legge whyche remayned behynde: euermore takynge hede of this, that by handelyng of the child she doo not remoue ne sette oute of theyr place thee two handes hangynge downe warde towarde thee feete.

¶ b. Lykewyse sometyme it commeth to passe that thee syde of thee chyld cometh forward, as apeareth in the. b. fygure: and then muste the mydwyfe do so, that it may be returned to his natural fashion, and so to come forth. The.b.fygure

¶ bi. Also sometyme the chyld co- The.bi.fygure

meth forthe the feete forwarde, the legges beyng abroade: as in the. vi. fygure, and then muſt the mydwyfe ſee, that the feete & legges maye be ioyned togeather, and ſo to proceade and come forth: euermore regardynge thee handes, as I warned you before.

The. vii. fygure

C vii. If it come wyth one of the knees or both forward: as in the. vii figure, then muſt the midwyfe putte by the birth, tyl ſoch time as the leg ges and feete come righte forth, and then to do as afore.

The. viii. fygure

C viii. when the chylde commeth headlonge, one of the hādes coming out and appearinge before: as in the viii. figure, then lette the byrth pro-cede no farther, but let the mydwyfe putte in her hande, and tenderlye by the ſhoulders thruſt in the byrthe a-gayne, ſo that the hande may be re-ſetteled in hys place, and the byrthe

to

to come forthe ordinately and naturallye, as in the fyrste fygure: but yf by this meanes the hande come not to hys conuenyente place, then lette thee woman lye bpryghte wyth her thyghes and belly bpwardes, & her head downewardes: so that by that meanes it maye be broughte to passe, and then bringe her to her seat agayne.

Ix. But yf it proceade wyth both hãdes forewardes, thẽ must ye lykewyse doo as afore: by thee shulders thrusting it back agayne, vntil soch tyme as thee handes lye close to the sides, & so to comeforth as apeareth in the.ix. fygure. The.ix. fygure.

Cx. But whẽ it cometh arseward, as in the.x. fygure may be sene, then must the mydwyfe with her handes returne it agayne, vntyll soche tyme that the byrth be turned, the legges and feete forwarde, other elles yf it the.x. figure

maye

may be so, it were best that the head myght come forwarde, & so naturally to proceade.

The.xi.figure. ¶ xi. And yf so be that it appeare and come forth fyrste wyth the shulders, as in the.xi.figure, thē must ye fayre & softely thrust it back agayne by the shulders, tyl soch tyme as the head come forward.

The.xii.figure ¶ xii. But when the byrthe commeth forth wyth bothe handes and both fete at once: as in the.xii.figure then must the mydwyfe tenderly take the chylde by the head, & returne the legges bpwarde, and so to receaue it forth.

The.xiii.figure ¶ xiii. And when it cometh brestwarde, as in the.xiii.figure, the legges and handes by dynge behynde, then let the mydwyfe take it by thee fete or by the head, whych that shal be moost apte and commodious to come forwarde, returninge the reste

bp

vpward, and so to receaue it fourth, but yf it may be headlyng that shal be beste.

Cxiiii. Nowe sometyme it chaunceth the womã to haue two at a burthen, & that both proceade together headlonge: as in the.xiiii.fygure, & then must the mydwyfe receaue the one after thee other, but so that she let not slyppe the one whylest she taketh the fyrste. The.xiiii.figure,

Cxv. If bothe come forth at once with their fete forward, thẽ must the mydwife be very diligent to receaue fyrste the one, and then the other: as hath ben shewed before. The.xv.fygure

Cxvi. when the one cometh headlonge, the other fotewyse: then must the mydwife helpe the byrth that is most nearest the yssue, and it that cometh fotelõge (yf she can) to returne it vpon the head: as is spoken of before, takynge euer hede that the one be The xvi.fygure

be not noysom to the other in receauing forth of eyther of them.

¶ And to be shorte, let the mydwyfe oftentymes annoynte & mollifie the way & passage with some of the fore sayde oyntmentes, to make the womans labour so moche the easyer, & haue the lesse traueyll & payne. And yf there chaunce to be any apostume or dysease about that places in thys tyme, by soch anoyntinge to alaye & swage the payne: so that for thee tyme it maye be thee lesse griefe to the party: as I spake of before also: and for them that be in this case, it shall be best to lye growelyng, as I sayd of the grosse, fatte, and fleshelye woman.

¶ Remedies and medicines, by the whych the labour may be made more tollerable, easy, and wythoute great payne.

Capit. v.

The

The thynges whych helpe the byrthe, & make it more easye, are those. Fyrste the woman that laboureth, must eyther syt groulyng or els vpryghte leanyng backewarde, accordynge as it shall seme commodious and necessarye to thee partye, or as she is accustomed. And in wynter or colde wether, the chamber where in she laboureth muste be warmed, but in sommer or hoate wether, let in the ayre to refreshe her wyth all, least betwene extreme heate and labour the woman faynte and sound: and furthermore she must be prouoked too sneesynge, and that eyther wyth thee powder of Eleborus, or els of pepper. Also the sydes of thee womā must be streken downewarde wyth the handes, which thing helpeth greatelye and furthereth: and let the mydwyfe alway be very dylygent

Meanes to helpe & prouoke the byrthe.

lygent prouyding and seinge what shalbe necessary for the woman, annoynting the priuities wyth oyle or other soch greace as I spake of before in thys fashion.

A good mollifying oyntement

¶ Take the oyle of whyte lylies or duckes grese, & with that tempre .ii. graynes wayghte of safran, & one grayne of muske and ther with annoynte the secret partes, yf thys profyt nothing then vse this suffumigation.

¶ Take myrrhe, galbanū, castorium, let those be beatē & make lyke pylles of them tēpered together wyth bulles galle, then take a dramme of these pylles, & put it on hoate coles, & let the woman receaue thee fume and fauour of it vnderneth.

¶ Another perfume: Take yelowe brimstone, myrrhe, madet, galbanum, oppoponacum, of eche lyke moch, & tēpre al those together, makyng of them pylles, & with those also ye maye make fume to be receaued vnderneth.

¶ Item the fume of culuer dunge, or of hawkes dunge by puttynge to of oppoponacum, is souerayne for thee same. All

thes

theſe fumes open the poores beneath, and cauſeth nature to be thee freer in delyueraunce.

¶ Alſo it is very good to dyp wool in the iuce of rue, & the ſame to cõuay into the ſecretes. Alſo the poudre of ariſtolochia rotũda, or ỹ rote called bothor martis, ciela minus or malum terre, or the ſeede of ſtaphiſagre: any of theſe wrapped in wool, & conuayed inward, prouoketh and calleth forth the byrth.

¶ Item take helebores, oppoponacum, and wrap them together in wool, & minſter them inward: for that wil bring forth and prouoke the birth, whether it be aliue or dead. Alſo the rynde and barke called Caſſia lignea beaten to powdre, & tempered wyth wyne and dronken, prouoketh well the byrth.

¶ Item Aſa fetida, of the bygnes & waight of a peaſe, mingled together with Caſtorij of the wayght of a dram: beaten together and tẽpered with wine mixte with water and ſo dronken, is verye good to prouoke the byrth. Alſo canell dronke wyth wyne is very good.

¶ Item take a ſcruple of roſes, wyth the water of the ſeede of fenigreke, cicercula, maydenhayre: all beaten together and ſo-

den

and the oyle of blew flowre de luce a smal quantitie tempered there with all: & then geue it to the woman that laboureth, & it shal prouoke the birth greatly. Also Cassia lignea and Asa fetida dronke with wyne, be very good for the same.

¶ Also holyoke soden in cōdupt water & dronkē, is souerayne for the same purpose and it is very good for her to washe her in the water, in the whyche thys holyoke is decocte and soden.

¶ Item certayne pylles the whych make the labour easye & wythout payne.

¶ Take canel or cinamome & of sauyne of eche a dram, of Cassia lignea a dram and a half, of myrrhe, Aristolochia rotunda, & Costus amarus, of eche a dram, of Storax liquida half a dram, & of Oppium the waygh̄te of xii. graynes, beate these al together, & forme thē into pylles, & geue vnto the womā two drams of these pylles with .ii. ounces of good olde wyne.

¶ Item Safran & Syler montanum prouoketh the byrth of auye lyuynge thynge, yf it be dronckē: howe be it to a woman geue neuer passynge a dram at once of Safrane, for greater quantyte shuld greatly hurte.

¶ Item take .v. drames of sauyne, of rue

or

or herde grace one dragma and an halfe, of iuniper byries. ii. drams, of Asa fetida, Amoniacum, madder of eche. ii. drames, of these make pylles: geuen to the woman in labour with water in the whych is soden sauyne and penirial, or els with the broth of cicercula, and the iuyce of rue shal help very greately.

¶Item take. ii. drames of sauyne of Asa fetida, Ammoniacum, and madder, of eche halfe a dram: these temper together in pylles, & geue her wyth wyne. i. dram of thee same.

¶Item take of Aristolochia longa, pepper and myrrhe, of eche lyke moch, confict thē together with wine & make pylles of thē and minister them with an ounce of water of the decoction of lupines, these pilles be of soch efficacy & strength, ỹ it alleuiateth and vnpayneth the byrth, it deliuereth the matrix or mother from al maner of birth, be it alyue or dead.

¶Item take of whyte Bedellium, myrrhe and sauyne, of eche lyke moche: temper these wyth Cassia lignea and hony, & make pylles of them to the byggenesse of pesen, and of these pylles geue at eche tyme fiue to the labourer, which be of ỹ same might and strength wyth the other pylles spokē

of here nerte before.

¶ Item take of myrrhe, Castorio, & storax, of eche one dram, temper them with hony and make pilles of it: these for this purpose excel & passe al other, they be of soch vertue and strength in operation.

¶ A playster to prouoke the byrth: Take wyld goward, & seeth it in water, in ỹ same water temper myrrhe, the iuyce of rue, and barly meale, so moch as shal be sufficient, shape these thinges togeather, & make it plasterwyse, then laye it to the womās belly betwene the nauel & the nether part: this plaster shal helpe meruaylously.

And although many other thinges ther be the whych haue vertue and power too prouoke byrthe, and to helpe it, yet leauing al soch thynges for breuite & shortenes we haue set here only a certayne: whose efficatie & power shalbe sufficiēt to this present purpose.

¶ How the secondyne or second birth shall be forsed to yssue forth, yf it come not frely of hys owne kynde.

Capit. v.

Here

Here also sometyme it commeth too passe, that the secondyne, which is wont to come togeather wyth thee byrthe, remayne and tarrye behynd and folowe not. And that for diuers causes: one is. For bycause peraduẽture the womã hath ben so sore weakened and feblyshed with trauayle, dolour & payne, of that fyrste byrth, that she hath noo strength remayning to help her self to the expelling of thys seconde byrth: another may be, that it be entangled, tyed, or lette wythin the Matrix (whych chaunceth manye tymes) or that it be destitute of humoures, so that the water bee flowen from it sooner then tyme is, whych shuld make the places more slypperye and more ealye to passe thorowe: or els that the places ouer weryed, wythe longe and

sore labour, for payne contracte or gather together, & enclose them selfe agayne: or that the places be swolle for anguisshe and payne, and so lette the commynge forth of the seconde byrthe.

¶ But to be shorte of what so euer cause it be thus stopped, the mydde-wyfe in any wyse muste fynde sochе meanes that it maye be vnlooſed & expulsed. For otherwyse greate inconuenienty shoulde chaunce to the partie, and specially suffocatiō and chokynge of the matrix, whych also must so mochе the more be taken hede to, for because the second birth retayned & kept wythin, wyll soone putrifye and rot: whereof wyl ensue yll noysom & pestiferous vapoures ascending to the hart, the braynes, and the mydryffe: through the whichе meanes the womā shalbe shorte wynded, faynte harted, often soun-

dinge

dyng and lyeng wythoute any maner of mouynge or styrynge in thee pulces: yea & many times is playne ly suffocated, strangled, & dead of it: wherefore that none of these thynges happen, wyth all diligence and payne it muste be prouyded that the secondyne be expelled.

¶ Yf retention of it come by weakenes of the laborer through long trauayle: thē must she be recomforted & strengthed wyth good comfortable meates & drinkes which may enhart her: as broath made of the yolcke of egges, or wyth good olde wyne and good fat and tydye flesshe, or byrdes, hennes flesshe, capons, partrige, pygins and soch lyke. Retention of flowres for weakenes.

¶ And yf retention of this secōdyne come, because the place is contracte togeather agayne, eyther elles that the matrix is swollē for longe paine then must be bled soche thynges to

prouoke it out, the whyche do make the waye slypper, sople, & easy for it to proceade, wyth the oyles or oyntmentes spoken of before, as oyle of whyte lyllies, of maioram, and of blewe lyllyes.

¶ Item the beryes of iuniper or galbanū beaten to pouder & dronke wyth luke warmed wyne, wyl cause the same to yssue out.

¶ Item sotherne wood, or elles penyryall sodden in wyne, and thee decoction droncken, is of thee same vertue.

¶ Itē to suffume the secretes with thee perfumes wrytten of before, is good for this purpose, & the vapour of the water in which mallowes, holyoke, and berefoote be soden, receaued beneth, is lyke good.

¶ Also to wasshe that partes in water in whyche is sodden branne, or to holde a lyttle bagge full of soden

den branne to thee place, and there wyth all to sooke the place is verye profytable.

¶ But yf the retention of thee secondyne come by reason that it is entangled or fastened in some place of thee Matrix, so that it wyll not resolue ne loose, then make a fume vnderneath of brymstone, yuye leaues, and cresses, or elles of cresses & fygges.

¶ Also of all odoriferous and swete smellynge thynges, as Ambre: Muske, Frankencense, Gallia muscata and confection neare, the whyche sauoures and perfumes put on the emberres muste be so clooselye receaued vnderneth, that noo parte of the smell doo ascende to the noose of the womā. For to the nose should the sauoure of nothynge come, but onely of soche thynges, the whych styncke or haue abhominable smell,

as Asa fetida, Castorium, mans hayre or womans hayre burnte, peacockes fethers burnt. Ite in thys case it shal be very good to make a perfume vnderneth of the houe of an asse: whyche thinges although they be of yl sauour, yet they be of soche nature & efficatie, that they occasionate not onelye the secondyne, but also dead byrthes to proceade and come forth out of the matrix.

¶ And in thys case also let the woman with holde her breath inward in so moch as she can: for that shall dryue downeward soch thynges as be in the bodye to be expelled.

¶ Ite let her be prouoked to sneese with the pouder of Elebor⁹ or pepper put in ỹ nose, holding her mouth and nose so cloose as may be.

¶ Also the oyntment, whych is called Vnguentum Basilicon, conuayed into the matrix, is very good: for it mollyfieth

lyeth the place & draweth oute the secondyne parforce: thee whyche so sone as it is expelled, infude the oile of rooses into the same matrix. Itē roose water tempered with a quantytie of the powder of holyoke and droncke, is good to expell the secondyne.

¶ And yf it be so that any parte of the secondyne doo appeare, lette the mydwyfe receaue it tenderly, losing it out fayre & softely, least it breake: and yf ye doubte that it wyl breake, then let the mydwyfe tye that parte of the whych she hath handfaste to the womans legge or fote, not very strayghte, least it breake: nether very lax, least it slyp in agayne, & then cause her to sneese. Now yf the secōdyne tarye or sticke, so that it come not quickly forewarde: then loose it a lyttle and a lyttle verye tenderlye wrethynge it from one syde to another

ther, tyll soche tyme as it be gotten out: but euer beware of violente and hastye mouyng of it, least that with the seconde birth ye remoue the matrix also.

¶ And yf in thys meane whyle the woman fayne or sowne by reason of greate payne ensuynge of the takynge awaye of this secondyne, thē muste ye mynister soche thynges to her the whych comforte the head & the harte, as be electuaries whyche are conficte wyth muske, ambre, & thee confectyon of precyous stones: as Diamargariton, and soch other Also soche thynges thee whyche comforte thee stomacke as Diagalanga. Dia cinamomum, and soche lyke, whyche are al waye in a readynesse at thee Apothecaryes, thee whyche also she shall receaue wyth wyne.

¶ Item to remoue the secondyne,

and

and to expell it: take rue, horehound, sothernewood, and mother wurte, of eche lyke quantyte: and thē take so moche of thee oyle of lylyes, as may be sufficiente to slype, moysten and sooke the forsayde herbes in: put al thys togeather into a glased potte couered wythe soche a couer that it haue a lyttle hole or vente aboue in thee toppe of it: and sette thys potte ouer thee fyre of coales, so that it boyle a lytteli whyle: then take it from the fyre, and sette it vnder the stoole where the womā sytteth made for the nonce hauinge a pype made for that purpose, of the whych the one ende ye shal putte into the vente or hole of thee couer of the potte, and thee other ende muste the partye receaue into her bodye. And so to syt clooſed roumde aboute wyth clothes, that noo vapoure or ayre goo forth of the pot, hauyng a

few

fewe coles vnder it, to kepe it hoate: and thus syt thee space of an howre or two, tyll soche tyme as the secondyne moue or begyn too proceade of hys owne kynd. And yf it be so that ye profyte not thys wayes, yet then laye thys playster on the bellye betwene the nauel and the secretes: of the which we shal speake hereafter the whych is of soch operation & efficatie, that it expelleth dead birthys yf for all thys the secondyne come not forewarde, then leaue it, and vse no more medycines ne remedyes too that pourpose but lette it alone, for within fewe dayes it wyl putrifie & corrupt, and dissolue vnto a watery substaūce, thyck lyke bryne, or other fex myxed with water, and so yssue forth. How beit in the meane whyle it wyl put the womā to great payne in the head, in the hart, & in the stomack, as we touched before.

How

¶ How that many thynges chaunce to the women after theyr labour, and howe to auoyde, defende, or to remedye the same.

Cap. vi

IT is also to be vnderstanded that manye tymes after the delyueraunce happeneth to womē other the feuer or ague, or swellyng or inflation of the body, other tūblyng in the belly, or elles commotiō or setteling out of ordre of the mother or matrix Cause of the which thiges is sometymes lack of due & sufficient purgation & clenlinge of the flowres after the byrth, or els contrary wyse ouer moche flowinge of the same: whych sore doth weaken the woman. Also the great labour & styrrynge of the matrix in the byrth.

¶ Then as ofte as it commeth for lacke of due purgation of thee flowres, there muste be mynystred soche thyn-

thynges, the whych maye prouoke the same, whether it be by medycynes taken at thee mouthe, or by lotion and wasshinge of the fete, or by fumes, or odours, or emplastration, or by decoction of herbes seruynge to that purpose: other elles by oyntmentes, and soch other thinges, according as thee person or the parell doth requyre: of the whych thinges fewe or noo women be ignoraunte. And ye must take dyligēt hede that she be exactly and vtterly pourged: to thys be agreable al soch simples the whych prouoke vryne and open the paynes, makynge free waye for the bloude to passe, and sende the humoures and matterr downewarde: as mother wurte, asarum, sauyne, penyriall, parcelye, charuyll, anyse sede, fenell seede, iuniper byries, rue, baybyries, germaunder, valeriam, time, cinamome, spikenarde, & soch

other

other. All those thinges as they do prouoke and cause vryne, so do they also prouoke and cause the flowes to departe. Howe be it, as neare as ye can, vse none of these thynges wythoute the counsell of an experte phisition, leaste whyleſt ye help one place ye hurt another: also to sneese helpeth moche to thys matter, and to holde in the breath enclosyng the noose and the mouthe. Also fumigation made of the eyes of salte fyshes or of the houe of a horse vnderneth, prouoketh the flowes, yf ye profyte not by thys meanes, then beynge able too beare it, lette her bloude in the bayne called Saphena, vnder theeancles of theefeete, for thys prouoketh flowes chiefly of al other thinges.

¶ Lykewise do, yf the woman haue the ague after her laboure, for that commeth of lyke cause by retention

For the ague in women wythe chylde.

of

of the flowres: and in the feuer lette her vſe to drinke water, in the whyche is decocte barley beaten, or cicer and barlye togeather: or water in whyche be ſodden Tamaryndi, or waye of mylcke, and let her eate cullys made of a cocke, and ſwete pome granates: for theſe thynges do prouoke the flowres, and mytigate the the immoderate heate, refreſhynge greately the body, loſynge and openynge ſoch thynges, the whych before were conſtricte and cluddered to geather.

¶ If the body after labour do ſwel and inflate, then let her drincke water in the whyche is ſoden cicer and cummyn beaten together.

¶ Item good old wyne wyth the electuarium called Diacimmū or of the trochiſkes of alcheehengi, otherwyſe called Halicacabus.

¶ Alſo in this caſe a clyſter made of ſoch thynges, the whych do vaynquiſhe and expell

pell ventosities and wyndnesse, as annis seede, fenell sede, rue the herbe & the seede: bayberyes, cummyn. &c. Also a pessarie or suppositar made for that part, of Aristolochia rotunda, sqinantum, storax liquida, doronicum, zeduaria.

¶ Agayne yf the woman after her labour haue fretting and knawyng of the guttes and payne of the matrix, and other secrete partes there about, thē let her vse the vapour and fume of soch thynges the which haue vertue to mitigate, swage, and alay ẏ payne: as mallowes, holioke, fenegreke comyn, camomel, and sauyne. Of these also make emplasters & bagges, the whych may be applyed to the payned places.

¶ Also to annoynt the places wyth oleum sesaminum (yf it were to be hadde) or wyth oyle of swete almondes. And yf no greate heate do abounde in the woman, she maye drinke triacle, or trifera magna, with wyne in which is decoct motherwurt or mugge wurte.

¶ Also agaynst payne in the preuy partes take penyrial, policaria, syx leaues of bay tree, seeth them together, and receaue the vapour vnderneth closely.

¶ Itē take rue, red motherwurt, sothernwood, beate them together, & tempre them

with the oyle of penyrial, & put al togeather into a pot, & set it ouer ỹ fyre a while tyll it be somewhat soden together, & then take it of agayn, & put it into a lytle roũd lynnen bag made for the purpose, the why che with these herbes in it ye shal conuay into the secretes.

¶ Item take canomel & lyne of eche lyke moch. iiii. hãdfulles, braye thẽ together & seeth them ỹ white wyne, & then put it in a roũd bag of lynnen, as before was done, & cõuay it into the womãs preuy partes. Itẽ let her drinke for the same purpose. ii. graynes of muske with wyne.

¶ Itẽ take whyte onyons & couer thẽ vnder the hote ashes, the whych whẽ they be wel rosted, beate thẽ together with frelye butter vnsalted, & make it in maner of a plaster, & then put it in a lĩnẽ bag, & conuay it into the plates, as before: in ỹ meane whyle perfuming ỹ preuy partes wyth whyte frankencense & storax.

¶ Yf it be so that the woman be vered about the backe & loynes after her labour, take canomel & nuggewort, of eche two hãdfuls, of wormewood, lotherne wood of eche. i. handful, of motherwort thre handfulles, of cynamome & nutmegges beaten smal half an ounce: decoct al these thinges

together

together, and in the water of this decoctiō beyng warme, dyp a spunge or other linnē clothes, fomenting, soking, & streking the back with the same, and so do often times or els put all these foresayd herbes togeather soden in a bagge, and laye it playster wyse to the backe.

¶ Yf this profyt not: take oyle nardyne oyle of white lillies, of eche an ounce & an halfe, to the whych put a dram of nutmegges beaten to smal powdre, w this anoynt the backe. Item take oyle of anete, oyle of camomell, of eche an ounce, oyle of whyte lyllyes. ii. ounces, of ware. ii. drams: dyssolue all these together ouer the fyre, and therwyth annoynt the backe.

¶ But yf after the labour the flowres yssue more vehementelye and in greater aboūdanse then they shuld to the greate effeblysshynge of thee womanne, and inducynge of moche langeor and paynefulnes: then fyrst shall ye note wherē vpon it cometh: for thee cause knowen: thee dysease maye the more readelye be recured: and causes of it be dyuers: but most

what remedyes when the flowres yssue more abundauntly then neadeth.

especyall those that folowe: that is to saye: Of moch aboundante superfluous blonde contayned in the hole body: or of moche commistion of the colericke humoure and thee blonde togeather, by the whych the blonde is enfyred and chawfed: and so dystendeth, openeth, & setteth abroade the baynes whyche descende to the matrix.

¶Also the blond beyng very thyn & waterysshe: for so it penetrateth, thryleth, & yssueth forth the sooner. Also yf the baynes be verye large, and receaue moch blond: for in that case they sende forthe thee more agayne. Also yf the matrix be vnmyghtye and weakened, thee baynes lykewyse weake and large: so that they can not retayne nor wyth holde the blonde.

Also yf the body of the woman or the outwarde partes be verye dense close

close, and compact together: so that the outewarde poores be contracte and shut, in soche wyse that no vapours or swet can yssue out at them thē this shal cause the yll humours (whyche otherwyse woulde passe thorough the poores in swette) too remayne wythin the bodye, & there too engendre and encrease greate flure and aboundaunce of matter, whych proceadeth with the flowres and augmenteth thee quantytie of them.

¶ Also yf the vaynes of the Matrix be (by some chaunce) open and flowe forthe: as yf thee Matrix be perysshed or otherwyse viciate. Or yf it chaunce that the woman have had a fall, or hath ben thrust, or beaten, by all and anye of thys meanes maye come thys inordinate flure of flowres.

¶ Now seynge then that it entueth

Good cōsayl to the women.

by so manyfold occasiōs & causes it shalbe mete that womē in thys case be nothinge ashamed ne abashed to disclose theyr mynd vnto expert phisitians, showing theim euery thing in it, as they knowe where vppon it shuld come: so that the phisition vnderstandinge thee womans mynde, may the soner by his learning & experience cōsyder the true cause of it, and the very remedy to amende it. And many thinges there be whych sease and restrayne this ouer moch flowing of flowres: both electuaries confections, trochiskes, powders, clysters, odoures, suffumigatyons, batthes, playsters, and oyntmentes of whyche for the loue of women I wil here set forth the most principal and best.

¶ Fyrste then to stynte and restrayne the outragyous fluxe of flowres, it shalbe very good to bynde the armes strayghte and strongelye, and not the feere or handes, as

some

some vnwyse men do teache, and then to set a ventose, boke, or cuppynge glasse wyth fyre (whyche is called boringe) vnder the brestes without any scarification: laying also lynnen clothes dypped in vynegre on the belly betwene the nauell and the secre tes: commeynge also into the places soche thynges whyche haue vertue to restrayne bloud: as the flowre and rynde of pomegra nate, ambre, terra sigillata, bole armeniacke, sanguis draconis, hematites, the red rose, whyte frankēcense, & galles: al those thin ges or as many of them as ye can conueni ently gette: beate theim to powdre in lyke portion, and tempre them with red wyne, makyng of it a plaster, the whych so tem pered put into a lyttle round bag the quā titie of a mans thombe, the which she shal put into the priuie partes.

¶ Item another plaster to be ministred lykewyse: Take of the bloudstone, called Emathites, bolearmeniacke: of eche halfe an ounce: sanguis draconis, licin̄, of eche ii. drams: karabe, otherwise named ambre the cuppes of acornes, cipresse tree nuttes flowres of pomegranade, of eche .i. dram: of the scales of yron one dram & an halfe: Turbyntyne and pytche lyke quantite, or so moch as shalbe sufficiēt to make a softe

and somwhat lyquid plaster: beate & bray al these together temperinge it to a plaster: & then do with it as ye dyd wyth the other before.

¶ An oyntmente for the same purpose. Take oyle Myrtine, oyle of rooses, of ech iiii. ounces: Carabe, the scraping of yuery the scrapyng of a gootes horne, redde corall, terra sigillata, whyte frankencense, of eche (beynge well and finely beaten) two drams: of whyte ware. ii. ounces: al these tempered together, make them in an oyntment, and ther with annoynte the wombe and the secretes.

¶ A bathe concerninge the same: Take wormewood, plantayne the more and the lesse, the toppes of vynes, freshe braūches of wylde mulberyes or of the bramble, vnrype damassons, slowes, or boloes, wylde peres, medlers or myrobolles, of eche thre handfulles, of red roose leaues two handfulles, of dayses, of all sortes of thystles, of ech. ii. hand fulles, of cinkefoyle, the leaues and rootes, tormentyl the rotes, colombyne, of eche an hande full: also of acorne cuppes a sawserful, of gawlles, of acorns pylled, of bursa pastoris, of eche. ii. handfulles: beate al these to powder, cuttinge and brosynge that, that wyll not be beaten to

powdre

powdre, & seeth thē togethers in rayne wa
ter, or els in water, in the whych .x. or .xii.
burnt flint stones haue ben quenched, thys
done, let the womā bathe her selfe in thys
water vp to the nauel, & when she cometh
forth of the bathe, geue her to drinke two
drams of electuarium athanasie, or nuclete,
with plātaine water, or yf she be sore thur
styr wyth red wyne.

¶ And lykewyse ye may geue vnto her
of these electuaries that folowe: take good
olde roose suger two ounces: of red coral,
burnt yuery, bole armeniacke, of eche two
drams: of hematites thre drams, beate al
these thinges togeather, tēpering it with
the rose sugre, & let her receaue of it in the
morning & euening, at eche time one dram
with .vi. sponefuls of plantayn watere: or
els the water of bursa pastoris.

¶ Item take the stone Emathites, and
rubbe it on a barbars whetstone called a
hone, tyll the hone seme red, then washe it
agayne frō the hone wyth plantayne wa-
ter, & so do often tymes, vntyl that ȳ haue
a good quantite of it, & euery morning let
the woman drinke .iii. iiii. or .v. sponefuls
of the same water.

¶ Farthermore ther be at the apotheca-
ries trochisckes whych helpe greatelye in
this

thys case, as thee trochiskes of karabe or ambre & the trochiskes of bole armeniake which muste be ministred a dram or more of ether of thē, wyth. iiii. or. v. sponefulles of plantayne water.

Who that requireth farther in this matter, let theim aske counsayll of the physytions.

¶ Now yf it be so that there be engendred anye apostume or other dysease in the pryuye places after her labour: thē must the apostumes & dyseases be clensed, purged, & healed, thee payne & ache of it mitigated & swaged with the iuyce of the beries or leaues of nyghtshade, & the iuyce of plantayne: also the oyle of rooses so that al these thinges be tempered together, and the places annoynted ther wyth.

¶ Itē other wyse: take the whyte of an egge, womās mylke the iuyce of purselayne, and tempre all these togeather, and conueye it to the dyseased place. These medycynes do refri-

refrigerate and coole the behement heate wonte to be in apostumes: as for the rest how to open, clense, dry, & heale soch apostumatiōs, ye must cō sulte wyth some phisition or experte syrurgian.

Many tymes also it chaunceth that the foundament gut commeth forth bothe in man and womanne, and specially in women in thys busynesse, by reason of theyr great labour and stryuyng wyth them selfe. wherfore in thys case it is the mydwyfes parte wythe her hande warmed and wet in whyte wyne, to reduce it back into hys place agayne, the whyche yf she can not by thys meanes, for bycause that peraduenture it be swollen, then lette her dyssolue butter in white wyne warmed and there in dyppe woolle, wythe the whyche wrappe the same gutte a whyle, so doynge oftentymes, tyll

itbe swaged, that it may be retourned in agayne: & ye maye vse in the steade of whyte wyne .luke warme mylke.

¶ And when it is thus returned and reduced into his place: take waxe, and melt it together with masticke, or whyte frankencense, then spredе it vpon lynnen plaister wyse, and laye it ouer the place where it came forth byndyng it to it wyth a lynnen cloth or roller for partyage of, and let this be done thus so often as she goeth to stole after that she hath done, vntyl soche tyme that it be so setteled wythin, that it come no more out.

¶ And yf ye wyl not occupye waxe, then dyp wool in ỹ oyle of masticke or of spyke nardy, and laye it vnto the place ouer the fundament, byndyng it fast vpō the place, as before.

¶ Itē another waye: washe & soke the gutte with the water in which is decocte and soden soch thinges which extract, drie and constrayne or combind, as gaules, cypresse nuttes, flowres of pomegranade, ambre, masticke, frankencense, sanguis draconis, & when it is well washed and soked with this water, then take the powdre of

an

of an hartes hoꝛne burnte, & ſtrue it round about the gutte, & ſo reſtoꝛe it agayne into hys place.

¶ Agayne ſometyme it cometh to paſſe, that after the womãs labour the Matrix is remoued oute of hys place, & appeareth foꝛthe, then let it be waſſhed & ſoked wyth the water in which be ſodē theſe thinges folowynge.

¶ Take of cypꝛeſſe nuttes, ſpikenard, balauſtium, acoꝛne cuppes, of eche an ounce: of meſpylles and vnrype wyld peres, and vnrype apples, plummes, and damſons oꝛ boloes, of eche a handfull, & ſoche of thoſe as be to be powdꝛed beate them to powdꝛe & the reſt diuide, & cut thē ſmal: then ſeeth them al together in rayne water, oꝛ els in water in the which ſtele beynge red hoate hath ben oftētimes quēched: & in the ſame water let the party bathe her vp to the nauel, oꝛ els dyp a ſponge, oꝛ a locke of wool in it, & therwith waſh & ſoke the ſame matrix oftētymes: thē euer with a fayꝛe cleane lynnen cloth wype it cleane agayn and ſtrewe vpō it the powdꝛe folowing beatē very ſmal & ſearched thꝛough ſylke.

Take

¶Take of frankencenſe, karabe, galles, balauſtium, cipreſſe nuttes, alome, antimony, bole armeniake, maſticke, of eche lyke moche, beate theſe to verye fyne powdre, & ſtrewe the matrix with it: thē tenderly reduce it into his place agayn with warme lynnen clothes bynding it vp.

¶But yf ſo be that the matrix be ſwolle, ſo that by this meanes it wil not be reſtored to his natural place agayne, then diſſolue butter in whyte wyne, as ye dyd before, & with the ſame ſoke it vnto ſoch tyme as it be ſwaged, and then reduce it.

Remedyes for the womās nauell whē it openeth it ſelf for payn in labour.

¶Agayne ſometyme it chaunceth that the womans nauell thorough labour is dyſſolued, ſo that it openeth it ſelf: then make a ſmall tente of fyne lynnen: and annoynt it wyth thys oyntmente that foloweth, and the ſame put into the nauell.

¶Take whyte frankencenſe, & beate it to powdre, & thē tempre it with the whyte of an egge, ſo that it be after the maner of liquid hony: wyth this annoynte the nauell within and without, annoynting alſo the tent, ỹ which being put in the hole of ỹ nauell: bynde ſome cloth ouer it to kepe it in his place.

¶Item

¶ Item many tymes it chaunceth that thorowe the greate difficultye and thronges of laboure the preuye parte & the foundament become one by reason of rupture & breakinge of the same parte in thee delyueraunce of the chylde: and that by that meanes the matrix descendeth & yssueth downe, the whych thing chaunceth sometimes by reason that the same place is very narow and also tender and the byrth bygge, & of great groweth, so that it procedeth with soch violence, that it breaketh the waye before it.

Howe that sometyme the priuye part & fundament become one

¶ When thys myshappe falleth, fyrste wasshe and soke the Matrix, & also reduce it to hys place agayne after the maner as I told you here immediatly before, then heale thys bracke and wounde by sowynge of bothe sydes of it togeather agayne with a silkē threde, as chyrurgions

do other woundes: & yf that lyke ye not, then maye ye cure it otherwyse wythout sowyng thus.

¶ Take two lyttle peces of lynnen cloth eche of the length of the woūd, & in bredth two fingers brode: spręde the litle clothes wyth some fast cleuing plaster, the which wyl cause the cloutes to sycke fast where they shalbe set: then faste thē the one on the one syde of the ryft, the other on the other syde, so that nothing appeare betwene the peces of lynnē in the myddes of them, but only the clyft & ryft of the wounde in the bredth of a straw: then (this done) sow the sydes of the lynnē together close as before I byd you to sowe the skyn: & when they be thus stytched together, laye a little lyquid pytch or tarre vpō the seme: and this dowe the lappes & sydes of the wound vnder the linnen plaster wyl grow together agayn and heale, and then may ye remoue your playsters.

¶ Item another way: take camfely dryed and beate it to powdre, also a lyttle quantite of cynamome beaten to powdre, ioyne them together, and strowe of this powdre into thee wounde, and wythoute faulte it shall heale.

¶ Of

¶ Of aborcementes or vntymely byrthes and the causes of it, and by what remedyes it may be defended, holpen and eased. Chapi.vii.

ABorcemente or vntymelye byrth is, when the woman is delyuered before due season & before the frute be rype (as in the thirde.iiii.or fyfth moneth) before the byrth haue lyfe, and sometymes after it hath lyfe it is delyuered before it styrre, beynge by some chaunce dead in thee mothers wombe. Of the whyche thynges there be many and dyuers causes.

Many causes of vntymely byrthes

¶ Fyrst sometymes the mouth of the matrix is so large & ample: that it can not conuenyently close it self together, nether contayne the feature or conceptiō: or els it maye be so corrupted & infected wyth vicious, flymy, fleumatike & other waterish humoures that the cauite or holonesse

therof is therby made ſo ſlypperye, that the feature cõceaued cãnot ther remayne but ſlyppeth and ſlydethe forth agayne. Alſo ſometymes the Matrix is apoſtumated and ſore, ſo that for payne it can not cõtaine the conception.

¶Item ſomtyme the cotilidons, that is the baynes by thee whyche thee conception and feature is tyed & faſtened in the matrix (thorough the whyche alſo thee feature receaueth nouriſhemente and foode as is declared in the fyrſte Boke) be ſtopped with biſcous and yll humours, or elles ſwollen by inflation, ſo that they breake: by the whyche meanes thee feature deſtytute of hys wonte nouriſhement periſheth and dyeth: and that mooſte communelye in the ſeconde or thyrde moneth after conceptiõ: wherfore Hypocrates ſayth: Al ſoche women whych be impregnate

nate or conceaued beyng of a meane state in theyr bodye (that is to saye, nether to fat or grosse, ne to spare or leane) if it chaūce any soch to abortce in the seconde or thyrde moneth (no other euydente cause appearynge) know ye for certaine that it ensueth for because the cotilidons be opplete stopped, & stuffed with yll humours, and be swollen and puffed therwith that they breake, and so consequentlye thee feature dyeth for faute of fode.

¶Item abortement somtyme cometh by reason that some of the places aboute thee Matrix be dyseased and grieued, as yf Intestinum rectum, whyche is called thee fundamente gutte be exulcerate: hauynge the pyles or hemorroides: or the byeycke or bladder bee swollen or encombred wyth thee stone, thee strangurye, or other euyll: in these cases

Abortement by reason of som greefe aboute ye matrix.

thoroughe the greate laboure and payne the whyche the partye hathe in endeuourynge and enforsyng her selfe other to stole or to make water, be engendered great motions downewarde, whereby many tymes the handfastenesse of the cotylidions is broken.

Aborcemēt by Tenasmus

¶ Also aborcemente maye come of a dysease called Tenasmus, thee whych is whē one hath euer greate desyre and luste to the stoole, and yet can do nothynge: neuerthelesse thee partyes greatelye doo enforce and payne them selfe to it: and as Hypocrates sayeth: The pregnaunt woman whyche hath Tenasmum, for the mooste parte abhorteth, that is to say: bryngeth forth her chyld out of tyme.

Aborcemēt throughe ye cowght

¶ Item the coughe, yf it be greuous, causeth the same: and as thee forenamed excellēt physition sayth:

soch

soche as are very spare and leane & broughte lowe euermore lyghtelye doo aborce, for because that all thee meate and fode the whyche they receaue, turneth to fode, nourishemēt, and restauration of theyr owne bodyes: and so is the conceptyon destitute of fode, wherefore necessarely it dyeth.

¶ Item thys chaunce also cometh by ouer moche bledynge at the nose or other where: or yssuynge of thee flowres immoderatly. And so sayth Hypocrates: yf the womanne yelde flowres after her conceptyon, it can not be that thee feature doo longe proue, the whyche sayinge muste be vnderstand, yf they flowe vehemētlye, or that the partye be weake and very spare, or if it be after the third moneth, for it maye be well that in the fyrste & seconde moneth flowres maye yssue, and yet no daunger: for

as yet lyttle fode & nourysshment ſa-
tisfyeth the conception for the ſmal-
nes thereof.

¶Item to be lette bloud, maye be
the cauſe of abortemēt, whych muſt
be vnderſtande in ſorhe as haue but
lyttle ſtore of bloude: but ſoch as ha-
ue great coppe and plentye of bloud
maye wythoute any parell (yf anye
vrgent cauſe require it) be let bloud,
ſo that it be after the .iiii. moneth, &
before the .vii. Howe be it I woulde
that none ſhuld be let bloud, excepte
ſome great and wayghty cauſe dyd
requyre it.

¶Item it maye come by takyng
of ſome ſtrong purgation before the
fowrth moneth and after the ſeuēth
moneth, and yf it be ſo that anye ne-
ceſſytie do ſo requyre that ſhe muſte
neades receaue a purgation, let it be
done betwene the .iiii. & the ſeuenth
moneth after the conception: for thē
may

maye it be wyth leaste parel: and see that the purgation be very gentell and easye.

¶ Also this maye come by reason of a cõtinuall fluxe, be it bloudy or otherwyse, & specially yf the woman be weake & spare, for by that meanes the conceptiõ is greatly weakened & perylled. Itẽ ouer moche vomyting may be cause of abortemẽt: for by ouer moch galpinge and reachynge vpwardes, thee cotilidons maye be broken, & so the feature too perylle.

¶ Itẽ ouer moch famyne or hunger & also sharpe and farnent sickenesse maye be thee cause hereof, as the pestilence, apostume in the brest, the soden palsye, the fallinge sycknesse. &c. Also ouer moch dronkenes and excesse fedynge and surfetynge, by the whych the byrth is suffocate and strangeled in thee bellye, and

the fode corrupte for lacke of due digestion.

¶ Jtē yf the byrth be sycke by any outward or inwarde cause, or yf the secondyne in the whych the feature is contayned, doo breake before hys tyme, and the humours and waters of the same flowe & yssue forth, causinge the place to be slippery, and so the byrthe to slyde away vntymely: or yf thee mother haue taken verye greate colde, or ouer greate heate, whych weakeneth bothe mother & chylde.

¶ And therefore oughte women wyth chylde to exchewe moche bathynge or goynge to the hoate houses in theyr tempynge: for that maye doo hurte thre wayes: fyrste, that it kyndeleth or enflameth the ayre or breath contayned in the bodye, and so styfleth thee chylde, and sometymes the mother to: Secondely that it

it relaxeth, dyssolueth, and looseth the cotilidons, and so maketh thee birth to yssue forthe: Thyrdely that the vtter heate of the bathe encreaseth the inwarde heate of the body, in so moch that the birth not beyng able to sustayne & abyde the heate, naturally proceadeth for refrigeration and coolinge: but in the tyme or about the tyme of labour she maye vse batthes, as I declared before, for the redyar and more expedite delyueraunce.

¶ Item the intemperantie & mutatiō of the ayre, and whether, may be cause of abortemente: for (as Hypocrates wryteth) when soeuer the wynter is hoate and moyst, and the sprynge tyde after colde and drye, sothe women in that sprynge tyde maye sone and of a light cause haue abortemente: or yf they aborte not, yet they shall be delyuered wythe great

Cause of abortemēt by mutatiō of the whether.

greate payne, and the byrth shall be verye weake and syckelye, so that it shall dye strayghte, or yf it dye not by and by, it shall proue but verye slenderlye: the cause of the whyche thynge is thys.

¶ For when that soch wyntering chaunceth, the hoate & moyste whether heateth & moisteth the womãs bodye, and by that the bodye is opened, vnlosed, & resolued, no lesse then though she were euery day bathed: and vpon thys whẽ the spring tyde cometh, yf it be colde and drye: fyndynge the bodye open and vnlooſed after soche sorte, the colde entereth and pearceth the bodye the sooner & the more vehemently, and the birth sealynge the soden colde and chaunge of whether, pyneth awaye, and dyeth in thee mothers bellye, or anone after it is delyuered: or yf it lyue, it liketh not, nor proueth not, and

great

greate payne ſhall it be to kepe lyfe in it.

¶ Item aborcement may happen by ouer mothe ſtyrrynge of thee bodye in labouringe, daunſing, or leapynge: or by ſome fall or thruſte agaynſte ſome wall, or beatynge, or by ſome ſodayne angre, feare, drede ſorowe, ſome ſodayne and vnloked for ioye. Thus haue I rehearſed al the cauſes of the whyche moſt communelye maye enſue aborcemente or vntymelye byrth: the whyche no doubte is moch more griefe & payne to the womã then the very naturall labour: for ſoch thynges as chaunce to man or womã contrary to nature or before nature doeth requyre it, is farre greater griefe then the ſame happenyng and coming in hys due ſeaſon.

Sygnes wherby ye may forefe aborcemẽt

¶ when the woman ſhal labour before Tokens to forefe Aborcement.

before her tyme, these sygnes are wont to go before: Fyrst her brestes whych before were hoole, sounde, & full, shall begynne too waxe lesse, to fall, and to slagge: and then euer for the mooste parte abortemente folowyth. But yf it be so that she goo wyth twoo chyldren at once, yf one of the brestes swage, whyche before was in good lykynge, the other remayning sound and safe: then loke of what syde the breste is of, and the chylde of that syde is in parel: wherfore Hypocrates wryteth: yf thee ryghte breste slake or slagge, thee masculyne or male byrthe is in parell: yf the lefte, thee female byrthe: because that for thee mooste parte when ther be two at once, the one is masculine, and the other femenyne: the man lyeth in the ryghte syde, & the woman in the lefte mooste commonlye.

Also

¶ Also another signe of abortcement is, whē the womā hath great paynes & dolours of thee Matrix, & that she begyn to waxe redde in the face, & al partes of the body to shake and trēble, as though it were in a feuer, or the palsye in the head. Item when she feleth great ache in the inner part of the eies toward the brayns, the reste of the body taken as it were with a werynesse without any outward apparent cause: why these thynges portende and sygnyfye abortcement to be at hande, specially ye yf at thee same tyme the flowres yssue also.

¶ Item yf the womans body doo swell and inflate wythe a certayne hardenesse or styfnesse, and that she feele stytches and as it were ventosyte or wynde rumynge from one syde of the bodye to thee other, and yet the belly not wythstandinge, be-

ynge

ynge nothyng the more ponderous or wayghtye, and that the same inflation do persyst and contynue any whyle the woman takynge and eatynge soche thynges whyche haue vertue to discusse & banquyshe ventosyte and wyndynesse: thys thinge I say doeth betoken parell of abortement thorough ventositie and inflation, and that chiefly aboute the thyrde or fowrth moneth after thee conception.

¶ Thus haue I sufficiently declared euydent and suffyciente sygnes, whereby maye be prouyded & foreseene the abortemente before it come: nowe wyll I shewe you thee remedyes. whereby it maye be auerted and let.

Remedyes whereby to auoyde abortement

¶ The chiefe remedye to auoyde abortement is: to shun all soch thinges whyche maye be cause of it, the whyche I haue cõpetently entreated

ted of already: but yf ye feare aboyce
ment because that the mouth of the
matrix be ouer ample & large, then
must ye vse soch thinges, whose ope
ratiõ is to contrahe, constrayne and
bringe togeather: as batthes: fumi-
gatiõs, oyntmẽtes, plasters, odours
and soch lyke, of the whych I haue
spoken before: and soch thinges the
whych represse and stynte the flow-
res flowynge ouer moche after the
byrthe.

¶ Agayne yf ye feare this parel, be-
cause thee mouth of thee Matrix, is
moyst & slippery: other because that
the cotilidons be replete & fulfylled
with viscous humours, & with infla
tions or ventosities: thẽ may ye de-
fende it by vsynge of soch thynges,
whose qualities be to purifie, clense
exiccate, or drye, & to represse vento-
sities: whereof also we haue made
mention here before.

Howe

Howbeit, in al thys matter let not to make some expert physitiō of your councell, yf ye may haue sothe one, for because that many soch thinges come, and not all by one way or meane.

¶ And yf ye doubte parell, for because that the Matrix or other places aboute be infected. exulcerated, or apostumate, or hauinge the stone or strangurye, & soch other thinges then alke, & vse the aduyse of some well learned medycyne, and he shall shewe you howe all thinges shal be recured.

¶ Yf agayne yᵗ feare abortement because the partye is very weake & lowe brought, then lette her fede on soch thinges the whych moysten & nourisshe wel or fatten the bodye, as capons flesshe, kydde, lamme, yonge veale, partrige, and sothe other.

¶ Agayne

¶ Agayne yf the woman be taken with any sharpe and fel dysease, the let her be cured of the same as shortely as can be wyth soch thinges the whych appertayne to the curing of soch disease: or yf she haue sustained anye longe famyne or hunger: then let her be fedde with good meates & dinckes moderatelye taken, and yf she haue surfetted by ouermoch eatynge and dinckynge (as nowe a dayes most communely people doo) then let her abstayne for a time, and yf it may be conuenientlye done, lette her receaue some easye and gentyll medytyne, wherbye she maye allenate and lyghten her of her surfettynge burthen: especyallye by vomytynge for the which purpose geue her half a pynte of water like warme, wherin hath bene soden two spoonefules of claryfyed honye: and then afterwarde, yf it come not of it self, wyth

her fynger or with a fether put into her throte tett her prouoke her selfe to vomite.

¶Now yf it be so, that the womā abounde in bloud, then shal it be very good a lytle to let her bloud, both for her selfe, and also for the byrthe, whych through ouer moche aboundaunce of it myghte happen too be suffocated & strangeled, of the whyche thynge also I haue spoken largely before.

¶Farthermore yf the womā feare abortement, by reason of continuall coughe, or ouer moche vomitie and perbrakynge, or the flure, or of thee disease called Tenasmus, or of ouer moche yssuynge of bloude, whether it be by the noose, or other partes of the body, are thaduyse of a phisitiō for remedye: yf for the fragilite, tendernes, and bracke, of the secondyne she feare thys abortemente: for be-

cause

cause that in this case the secondine shall not be able too holde and contayne the byrth, as for this, there is no other medycyne to defende it, but onely that the partie take hede that she hurte not her selfe by ouer moch mouynge or styrrynge, as by labouryng, daunsing, runnyng, standinge faste goynge, or caryenge of ponderous and weyghtye thinges, or lyftynge of the same. And to be shorte, let her wyth al warynesse take hede and be dylygent that she eschue and abstayne from all soch thynges the whych myghte cause and induce aborcement.

¶ Of dead byrthes, and by what sygnes or tokens it maye be knowen, and by what meanes it maye also be expelled.

Chapi. ix.

Sygnes to know whether the child be dead in the mothers wombe.

IT shalbe nowe conuenient for vs too speake of dead birthes, how it shal be knowen that thei be dead, and how they may be expelled from the mother. Signes thē that the byrth is dead in ther mothers wombe be these. ¶ i. Fyrst yf the mothers brestes do sodenlye slake, as I touched before. ii. Yf it moue it self no more beynge wonte before to styrre. iii. yf when the mother turneth her frō the one syde to the other, she fele it falling frō thone syde to the other lyke a stone or a dead waygh t. iiii. yf her belly and nauell begyn to waxe colde, which before was wont to be temperately hoate. v. yf any stinckinge and fylthy humoures flowe from the matrix, and chiefly after some fell dysease. vi. yf the womās eyes were holow and that her color chaūge frō white

to

whyte to swart and dunne coloure, and that her eyes and nose were astoned, & haue not theyr ryghte vse, and her lyppes were wan.

vii. Yf beneth the nauel and about thee secrete partes she feele greate throng & payne, the color of her face chaūging into worse & worse, other wyse then it was wont to do.

viii. Yf she haue appetyte too eate soch thinges, which be agaynst nature, & not wont to be eatē or dronkē.

ix. Yf she be in her slepe vexed wyth payne and terrible dreames.

x. Yf she be payned continually wyth thee strangurye, or that she enforce her selfe moch to the stole, and wyth all her power, and yet can not do any thynge.

xi. Yf her breath begyn to stynke, the whyche thinge lyghtely happeneth twoo or three dayes after thee byrth be dead. xii. Yf her handes

putte into verye warme water, and then layde on the womans bellye, & the chyld steare not, is a sygne that it is dead.

¶ Of all these sygnes nowe the more that come together of theym at one time and in one personne, the surer maye ye be that thee byrthe is dead, the whych beynge ones dead, all dylygence muste be hadde that it may be expelled out of the womans body.

¶ But here must ye se agayne whether it may be expelled, the mothers lyfe saued or no: for somtyme it chaũceth that the mother dyeth withall: and sometymes thee mother doeth well and prospereth.

To knowe whether ye mother shal be in parell or no.

¶ whether the mother shall be in parell wythall or no, by these thynges shall ye knowe, yf thee woman beyng in the labour sowne or feare as thoughe she were in a transe: yf her

her remembraunce fayle her: and
the ware feble & scante able to moue
or styre her selfe: yf she (called with
a loude voice) can answere nothing
at all, or elles very little & that very
softely, as though her voyce began
to fayle her: yf she be inuaded or ta-
ken among in the labouringe wyth
conuulsion or shrinkeling together:
yf she refuse or can not brooke meat:
yf her pulses beate verye faste, thee
whyche sygnes when ye see in thee
woman labouringe, it is an euident
token that she shall not lyue longe
after her delyueraunce, wherefore
committe the cure of her to the han
des of almyghtye God: but yf none
of these sygnes do appeare, then ha
ue good hope, for thee woman shall
do well, thee byrthe beynge once de-
parted: wherefore geue all dylygen-
ce to thee expulsyon of it; that thee
woman maye be delyuered of thys

Two meanes to expel dead byrthes.

dead burthen: thee whyche thynge maye be done by two wayes, eyther by medycynes expulsyue, or elles by certayne instrumentes made for the nonce.

¶ First without instrumētes with this fumigation: take eyther the houe or dunge of an asse, & put it on coles, & let the womā receaue the fume vnderneth. Another: take thee skyn of an adder, myrrhe, castorium, brymstone, galbanū, oppoponacū, madder, that the dyers occupye, pygeons dunge, or hawkes dunge, beate all these to powdre, and tempre them with ore gall, and make pylles of it eche of the quātite of a fylbert nutte, & then put one after another in thee coles, and receaue the fume through a pype or conduyt made for that purpose into the priuyties.

¶ Another: take encense, oppoponatum, galbanum, brymstone, of eche lyke moche, beate them together & temper them wyth ore galle, and make pylles of theym, and then of thee same make fumigations, as before.

¶ A potion for the same purpose, take asa fetida halfe a dram, of rue. iii. drams, of myrrhe. ii. drams, & beate thē to powdre & geue

geue to the woman at eche tyme a dram of thys powdre wyth whyte wyne, or wyth water in the whych sauyne is soden.

¶ Another, take figges, kenegreke, organnye, & seeth thē in water thee whych geue vnto the womā to drinke, for this drinke wyll engendre lubrycitie and slypperneſſe in the nether partes, and vse also some of those thynges whyche haue vertue to prouoke the byrthe, whereof we entreated before.

¶ Item certayne pessaries or suppositaries concernynge thee same: take gumme, Ammoniacke, Oppoponacū, Hellebrus niger, Staphisagre, Aristolochia longa, and Colocinthis wythout hys kernelles: beate all these thinges togeather, temperinge them wyth ore galle, and also wyth the iuyce of freshe rue, than make a pessarie of wollē: & annoynt and wet the pessarye with the same, conueyinge it into the secrete places.

¶ Item another: make a pessarye of wollen of the length & thyckenes of a fynger, and dyp it in the iuyce of rue in the which is dissolued a quantite of scammonie, and do with that pessarie, as before.

¶ Item take aristolochia rotunda, sauine garden cresses: of eche lyke moche: beate

them to powdre, and temper theym wyth ore gall: wyth thys annoynte a pessarye made and ordered as before is spoken of. Item yf the woman drincke the mylke of another woman, it wyll styrre and expell the byrthe.

¶ Item take of the iuyce of dittayne or of the powdre of the roote of the same herbe ii. drams, and geue the same to drincke to the woman wyth wyne, excepte she be in greate heate, for then shall ye geue it her wyth luke warme water: and thys shall expell the dead byrth wythout any perell of the mother.

¶ Item take of myrrhe. iiii. drammes, of Cinamome, Galbanum, castorium, of eche two drammes: of oppoponacum one dram: all those beaten, and tempered togeather wyth ore gall, make pyllys of them: weyenge eche of them a dramme, and with the fume of those perfume the nether partes, by this vapour the dead byrth is brought forth, inflation and suffocation of bloud is expelled.

¶ Item take of water mynte, sothernewood, muggewort, of eche a handfull, of asphaltum halfe an ounce, of madder two ounces and an halfe, of Camomell, horehound, fenegreke, of eche two ounces: frethy

al

al theſe thynges together in rayne water: in the whyche lette the woman bathe her ſelfe, then take of henſgreaſe and duckes greaſe, of eche. iiii. dꝛams: to the whyche adde two ounces of oyle of dyl ſede, wyth thys oyntment annoynt the womãs head coming out of the bath, then take dateſtones & beate theym to powdꝛe a dꝛam & an halfe, with a ſcruple of ſafran tempered to gether with whyte wyne, the which lette her immediatly dꝛike after ſhe come fozth of the bathe.

¶Item take oppoponacum, and make therof a peſſary the quantitie of a fynger, cõueye it into the pꝛiuities, this expelleth the dead byꝛth.

¶Item take of galbanũ a dꝛam oꝛ ſome what leſſe: of goates mylke an ounce and a halfe oꝛ two oũces in the which the galbanum beynge diſſolued, geue it to the woman to dꝛinke.

¶Item a plaſter foꝛ the ſame: take galbanum beaten & tempered wyth the iuyce of motherwoꝛte, and of thys make a plaſter by putting to of were a certayne quãtite: then take a lynnẽ cloth of ſoch length and bꝛedth, that it may couer al the belly vnder the nauel to the pꝛiuities from one ſyde to the other, on this cloth ſpꝛede this

plaſter

plaster of the thickenesse of a strawe: and laye it to the belye. Item take the triacle which is called diatessaron: and geue of it to the woman for to drinke, and it wyl expell thys dead byrth.

How to extract dead byrthes by Instrumentes

¶ But yf al these medicines profet not, then must be vsed more seuere & hard remedyes, with instrumētes, as hokes, tōges, and soch other thinges made for the nonce. And fyrst the womā must be layde a longe vpryght, the myddle parte of her body lyenge hyer then al the rest, cōpanyed of women assisting her aboute to comfort her, & to kepe her downe, that when the byrth is plucked oute, she ryse not wythall. Then lette the mydwyfe annoynte her left hand wythe thee oyle of whyte lylies or other that may make it soople and smothe, and holding out her fyngers shyttynge togeather her hande let her put it into the Matrix to fele & perceaue after what fashion the dead byrth lieth in the mothers wōbe so that she may the better put in hokes & soche other instrumentes to plucke it oute wythall.

¶ Yf it be so that it lye the head forewarde then fasten a hoke eyther vppon one of the eyes of it, or the rooke of the mouth, or vnder the chyn, on one of the shulders, which

of

of these partes shal seme most cõmodious and handsome to take it out by, & the boke fastened to drawe it out very tenderlye for hurtynge of the woman.

¶ But yf it lye the fete forewarde, then fasten the boke on the bone aboue the priuye partes, or by some ribbe, or some of ỹ backbones, or of the breste bones, & wyth thys boke is thus fastened, the mydwyfe maye not by & by drawe and pluck at it but holdinge it in her lefte hand, let her wyth her righte hande fasten another in some other part of the byrth right agaynst the first & then tenderly let her drawe both together, so that the byrth maye proceade and come forth on both sydes equally, mouing it frõ one syde to another, tyll ye haue gotte out al together: and now & then to helpe it in the comming forth with the fore finger wel anoynted, yf it chaunce to stycke or to be let any where, & as it cometh forthe, alwaye to remoue the bokes farther & farther on the dead byrthe.

¶ Agayne yf it chaunce that one of the sydes onely of the byrth do appere, & that it can not conueniently be reduced & returned vpward agayne, by reason of the narrownesse of the place, then bynde it with a linneth cloth, that it slyp not vp agayne, and

then

then to pluck it outward, vntyl soche tyme that the hole arme be oute & then wyth a sharpe knyfe cut it of frō the bodye: & euen so do yf both handes apere fyrst at once, or one legge or both, yf they can not be re turned backe, to be otherwyse taken out conuenientlye: as ye cut the arme from the shulders so lykewyse cuttinge the legges frō the thighes, for the whych purpose ỹ chyrurgiōs haue mete instrumentes made for the nonce wyth the whych soche legges & armes maye sone be cut frō the body: these partes beynge once refecte and cut frō the body, then turne the reste, so that it maye eakely proceade with as litle payne to the mother, as may be.

CYf it be so that the chyldes head be so swollen by inflation, swellynge, or resorte of humours that it will not conueniently yssue oute that naturall places, thē let the mydwyfe wyth a sharpe penknyfe cut opē the head, that the humours cōtayned in it maye yssue & runne forthe, and so the head to ware lesse, able to be plucked out: but yf it be so that not by any soche casualtie the head be bygge, but onely of a natural groweth, then muste the head be broken in peces, and the partes euermore taken forthe wyth soche instrumentes, as the chyrurgi-

ons

ons haue ready and necessary for soch purposes.

¶ Agayn yf that after the head were come forth, yet ỹ brest part would not folow for greatnes, thẽ must ye breake & cut likewise ỹ part, vnto soch time ỹ it may be hadde forth. And euẽ so lykewyse yf al the rest of the body shuld be so swollen that it wold not proceade ne come forth, thẽ must it lykewyse be brokẽ in pieces, & so had forth.

¶ Farthermore yf by chaunce or dysease it come to passe that the mouth of the matrix be exulcerate or apostumate, so that thee passage be made the narower by that meanes, the dryer & the more cõtract, thẽ must ye fyrste studye and endeuour you to sople and ease the places by oyles & other greases, soch as I spake of sufficiently before in the fowrth Chapter with batthes & fumigations.

¶ Also yf the dead byrth come sydelonge, then muste ye do what may be done to cõuerte and turne it to soche fashyon, that it maye moste rafelye be brought forth: the matrix & other secretes muste be annoynted, perfumed, and vapoured wyth soche thynges, the whyche maye make it more ample and large, yf it can not be thus had forth hole, then lette it be cut out by piece

mele, as is before spoken of. And yf after thys delyueraunce the flowres yssue ouer vehemently, then vse soch thynges as haue vertue to restrayne them, of the whych I haue spoken in the. vi. chapter before. But contrary to al this, yf it chaũce that the woman in her labour dye, & the chyld hauinge lyfe in it, then shal it be mete too kepe open the womans mouthe, & also the nether places, so that the chylde maye by that meanes both receaue & also expel ayre and breth, which otherwise might be stopped to the destruction of the chyld: And then to turne her on the left syde: & ther to cutte her open, & so to take out the chylde: They that be borne after this fashion are called Cesares, for because they be cut out of theyr mothers belly: Wher vppon also the noble Romayne Cesar the fyrste, toke hys name.

¶ In the last Chapter of this Boke, be briefly recyted certayne expert medicines whych be most requysyte to the chiefe purpose entended in this present Boke. Chap. x

For so moche as the principall entent & ende of this boke is to shewe the meanes and medycynes wherby the womãs labour may

may be made ẏ more easye: Therfore here I wyl cōpendiously set forth certayne medicines, oyntmentes, & emplasters soch as shalbe sufficient & moost requysite to that purpose: & soch agayne as hath bene well experimented & practysed: the whych also it shalbe cōuenient (for them that may) alwayes to haue in a readynes against their tyme of nede: for al though that nature be the chiefe & head doer in al thys busynes, (as in conception, bearing, and the byrth) yet not wythstandinge, medycynes manye tymes do helpe, ayde, & fortyfy nature, beynge sometyme impedite, & let: yea impotent and not able to do her offyce as shuld appertayne.

¶ When the tyme then of the womans labour is come, yf she labour longe & paynefully and yet the byrth do not procede, thē for the more expedyte and quycke delyueraunce, geue her of thys medycyne folowynge.

¶ Take of the finest Cinamome that may be chosen, iiii. dramge: and wyth a sharpe knyfe fyrste shryd it in verye small peces: and then beate it to very fyne powdre: Itē of Saffran dryed by the fyre tyl it be blackyshe, of Cassia lignea, fyne reubarbe, sauyne dryed, myrrhe, of eche of these seuen

scruples, of pure muske.xvi.graynes: euery of these symples exquisitely by thē selues powdred and then perfectly myxed in one wyth.vi.or.vii. drops of malueseye tēpre the hole mase into little roundels or trochiskes eche waying a dram. And in tyme of nede at the womans labour geue her hardly the wayght of.vi.d. of these trochiskes beaten into fyne powdre with.iiii sponefulles of ysope water, & other.iiii. of good wyne secke.

¶This medicine is not onely profytable at this time to prouoke the byrth, but also is notably good to expel the after birth, or any other soche lyke matter in that place hauinge nede of expulsion.

¶Itē yf nede do so requyre it shal be very expedient to haue this emplaster folowynge in a readines: the which spred abroade vpon a linnen cloth ether els vpō lether and so applyed to the bottome of the belly in as large maner as may be: dilateth and openeth the powres of that parts, amplyfyeth, enlargeth, & dissolueth them, wher by that, that is contayned in the belly findeth the frear yssue, to the lesse greuaunce of the mother.

¶Take of emplastrū de melliloto, of diachilon, of Oxycroceū, of eche two ounces

of

of the rotes of Asarū, of wyld neppe dried the leaues, of Benioym, of tosted cummyn of eche. ii. dragmes, of good Castorium. iiii dragmes, of the oyle of dyl, one oz. ii. spone fulles, soch of these as are to be powdred, beate thē fyne, & then ouer a softe fyre temper them al together perfectely. Item the same emplaster may serue to be layd ouer al the bottome of the belly and the pzypye passage, to pzouoke & draw forth the latter oz hynder byzth yf nede be: But yf that be not strong ynough, thē laye to this plaster folowing, which is of moch moze efficacye force and strength.

¶ Take of Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Serapinum, Myrrhe, of eche an ounce: of Colloquintida, Elleborus niger, of eche two dragmes, of Castorium, Pyrethrum, and storax liquida, of eche thze dragmes: of turpentyne and Petroleum, of eche. iiii. dragmes. Fyrst ouer a soft fyre temper the turpentyne, Petroleum and storax liquida togeather, then thereto adde Colloquintida, Elleborus, Castoreum, & Pyrethrum, beynge fyrst well and fynely beatē to powdre, after put to the Galbanum, Ammoneacum, serapinum, & myrrhe beyng first dyssolued in good malueseye and so take it from the fyre, and labour it wyth youre handes.

¶ This plaster is of great effecte to prouoke the after byrth: Itē vnset liekes stāped & fryed with butter, & so layd playster wise to the belly, serueth wel for the same Itē thee leaues or flowres of marigoldes drōke with white wine, expel ẏ afterbirth Also the sayd leaues & flowres dryed & at tyme of nede, kindled with a waxe candle, and the fume thereof receaued vnderneth in to the priuie parte prouoketh out merueloussly the after byrth.

¶ Item a comfortable potion to be takē after deliueraunce of the chyld: Take of the swetest garden mynts grene or drye: of the leues of Bawme grene also or drye: of the leues of Maiorā: the rotes of fenel the pythe taken out: the flowres of Buglosse, of Rosemarye, of Ruds, of Borage, and of dryed red rose leaues: of eche of these halfe a handful more or lesse, as it pleaseth you of cloues & mace brosed a lytle, ẏ wayght of .ii. pens: of Cynamome shrydde in small portions the wayght of .vi. grotes, knytte all these together in a clout or lyttle lynnen bagge, and hange the same bagge in a quart of Borage water: the space of a day and a nyght: then take out the sayd bagge and reserue the water: of the whyche take one halfe and the other half of pure wyne

secke

lecke or els muscadel & beyng mixt togea
ther put thereto a little of the conserue of
barbaris, cõserue of Borage flowres, con-
serue of rosemary flowres, & drinke hereof
euery daye the space of. iiii. or. v. dayes at
once. iiii. sponefulles of the water & other
iiii. of the forsayd wyne & this potiõ shal
both comfort the womã & also helpe great
ly to the expulsion of all noysome thinges
to be expelled.

¶ And here it is worthy to be noted that
where as it is a commune vsage to geue
often to womẽ in theyr chyldbed cawdels
of otemeele, thinking and saying thereby
the womã to be skowred: wher as in dede
the sayd otemeele is a notable bynder and
dryer, therefore ye shall vnderstande that
the right vse thereof is to geue it to soch,
as haue already bene wel and sufficiently
skowred and clensed frõ theyr after byrth
and other thinges to be looked for in thys
tyme, & case: but yf the womã be not suffy-
cientely purged already then geue her noo
otemeele cawdels nor other thynges that
may bynde.

¶ And thus I make an ende: prayng the
women readers hereof to accepte & suffice
thẽ selues with these fewe medicines here
in this chapter mencioned, and oftẽ by me

and other practised: the whyche thinge yt they shal do so, it shal (no dout) be occasion to me ꝑ soner to retake this matter in hãd agayne & to refreshe & furnishe the same ẅ newe & moch more excellente experiences then hath ben yet hetherto red or sene in any boke concerning soch matters.

¶ And as touching the aboue Trochisikes & emplasters described here in this place, ye shal fynd them alwayes ready made at the signe of the thre Doues in Bouckelers bery in London: the name of the good mã of that house is Wylliam Normeuyl. In whose shoppe I haue caused the sayd thinges faithfully to be made, for because that I am certayne that he is one of the moost sydell & faythfullest Apothecaries in Lõdon. And soch as wyl not spare for any coste to acquyre and obtayne of the best, and moost singular simples and droges in theyr kynde, that maye be gotten for moneye.

¶ Finis.

¶In this fyrst Chapter of the thyrde Boke, is fyrste declared the matters therein contayned, and then howe the infant newely borne must be handeled, nourished, and loked to. ¶Chap.i.

IN the secõd Boke we haue sufficiẽtly and at length declared the maners, fashions, & dyuersities of byrthes with the daũgers & parels often chaunsing to the women at theyr labours and after the same. And now here in this thyrd boke shal be entreated what is to be done to the infant borne, and how to chose a nource, & of her office, wyth manyfolde medycynes and remedies agaynst sundry infirmities, which efsones happẽ to infantes in their infancie.

What is to be done when the chyld is borne.

¶Then after that the infant is once come to lyght, by and by the nauell must be cut thre fyngers bredthe from the bellye, and so knyt vp: and lette be strued on the heade of that that remaynyth, of the powdre of bole armeniacke, and sanguis draconis, sarcocolla, myrrhe & cũmyne, of eche lyke moch beaten to powdre: then vppon that bynde a pece of wolle dypped in oyle olyfe that the powdre fall not of: some vse fyrste

to knyt the nauell, and after to cutte it so moch, as is before rehearsed.

¶ And farthermore some say that of what length the reste of the nauel is lefte, of the same length shal the chyldes tōge be, yf it be a man chyld. Item Auicēna sayth that dyuers thinges maye be knowen by marking of the childes nauel, for (as he saith) when the woman is delyuered of her first chyld, then behold the nauel of the chyld, which yf in that part of it which is nexte vnto the bodye it haue neuer a wrincle, it portendeth and doeth signifye perpetuall from thencefoorth sterilitie or barennes, & yf it haue any wrinkles in it, thē so many wrinkles, so many chyldren shal the woman haue in tyme to come. Also some adde to this and say: that yf there be lytle space betwene these wrinkles in the nauel, then shal ther be also lyttle space betwene the baryage of the chyldren: yf moch, it signifieth longe tyme betwene the bearyng of them: but these sayinges be neyther in the gospell of the daye, nor of the nyght.

¶ Now to returne to our purpose, when that the nauel is cut of, & the reste knytte vp: annoynt all the childes body wyth the oyle of acorynes, for ỳ is singularlye good to cōfirme, stedfaste, and to defende the body

dy from noysome thynges, whyche may chaunce from wythoute: as smoke, colde, and soche other thynges, which yf the infant be greued wythall, strayte after thee byrth, beyng yet very tender, it shuld hurt it greatly.

¶ After this annoynting washe the infant wyth warme water, & with your fynger (the nayle beyng pared) open the chyldes nosestrelles, & purge theim of the fylthynes. And also that the nource hãdle so the chyldes sytting place that it maye be prouoked to purge the belly. And chiefly it must be defended from ouer moch colde, or ouer moch heate.

¶ After that the part extant or the knot of the nauel is fallen (the which cõmenly chaunceth after the thyrd or .iiii. day) then on the reste remayning strewe the powder or ashes of a calfes houe burnt, or of snayl shelles: or of the powdre of leed, called red leed, tempered with wyne.

¶ Farthermore when the infant is swadeled and layde in cradel, the nource must geue all dyligence and hede that she bynde euery part ryght and in his due place and ordre, and that with al tenderneste & gentell entreatyng, and not crokedly and confusely, the whyche also must be done often

tymes

tymes in the daye, for in this is it, as it is in younge and tender ympes, plantes, and twigges, the which euen as ye bowe them in theyr youth, so wyll they euermore remayne vnto age. And euen so the infante yf it be bound and swadeled, the membres lyinge ryghte and strayghte, then shall it growe strayght and vpryght: yf it be crokedly handled, it wyll growe lykewyse: & to the yl negligence of many nources may be imputed thee crokednesse and deformytie of manye a man and woman, whyche otherwyse myght seme as wel fauered as any other.

By the onely negligence of nources manye chyld groweth croke backed and wryegged

¶ Item let the chyldes eyes be oftetimes wyped & clensed with a fyne & clene linne cloth or with spike: & let the armes of the infant be very strayghte layde downe by ye sydes that they may growe right: & sometime stroking the belly of the child before the vesike or bladder to helpe to ease & to prouoke the chyld to the making of water and when ye lay it in the cradell to slepe, set the cradel in such a place that neither ye beames of the sunne by day, neyther of the mone by nyght come on the infant: but rather set it in a darke & shadowy place, layinge also the head euer somewhat hyer the the reste of the body.

¶ And

¶ And farther let it be waſhed two or thre times in the day, and that anon after ſlepe in the winter with hote water, in the ſommer with luke warme water: nether let it tary long in the water but vnto ſoch time as the bodye begyn to ware red for heate: but take hede that none of the water come into the infantes eares, for ẏ ſhuld greatly hurt his hearing another daye.

¶ Then to be ſhort, when it is taken out of the bathe, let it be wyped & dryed wyth gentyll and ſofte lynnen clothes warmed, and then to laye it on her lappe the backe vpward, the which with her handes lette her tenderly ſtroke & rubbe, & thē to lappe it vp, and to ſwadell it, & when it is ſwadeled, to putte a drop or two of water into the noſetrylles of it, is very good for the eye ſyght. And ſo to laye it to reſte.

¶ Of the nourſe, and her mylke: and howe longe the chylde ſhulde ſucke, ¶ Chap. ii.

AS concernynge the bryngynge vp, nourysement, and geuinge of ſucke to thee chylde, it ſhall be beſte that thee mother geue her chylde ſucke her ſelfe, for the mothers mylke is more conuenyente & agreable to the infant then any other womans

The Mothers milke beſt & moſt familiar to the chylde.

mans, and more doth it nourisshe it, for because that in thee mothers bellye it was wont to the same & fed with it, & therfore also it doth more desyrously couet ỹ same, as that with the which it is best acquainted, and to be short, the mothers milke is most holsomest for the child. As Auicenna writeth it shal be sufficient to geue it sucke twyse or thryse in a day. And alwayes beware, ye geue not the chyld to moch sucke at once, in thys tender age of it, for cloywing of it, & lest also it loth it, but rather let it haue often of it, & lyttle at once, then few tymes & ouer moch at once. For soche as be ouer cloyed with the mothers milke causeth theyr body to swell & inflacte, & in theyr vryne shal it appeare ỹ it is not ouercome ne concocted or digested in the chyld, which thing yet yf it chaūce, let the infãt be kept fasting, vntyl̃ soch time as ỹ whyche it hath receaued alreadye, be cõpletelye digested. Item yf the mothers mylcke be somewhat sharpe or colerycke, let her neuer geue the chyld her best fastynge.

¶ Yf it be so that the mother can not geue ỹ infant sucke her self, ether for because of syckenes, or that her brestes be sore, & her milke corrupted thẽ let her chose a holsom nurse with these conditions folowing.

¶ Fyrst

¶ Fyrst that she be of a good colour and complexion, & that her bulke and breste be of good largenesse. Secondlye that it be not to sone ne to longe after her labour, so that it be two monethes after her laboure at the leste, and that (yf it may be) soch one which had a manchyld: Thyrdly that she be of meane and measurable lykinge, neyther to fatte ne to leane. Fourthly that she be good and honeste of conuersation, neyther ouer hasty or yreful, ne to sadde or solonne: neyther to fearefull or tymorous: for these affections and qualyties be pernicious and hurteful to the mylke, corrupting it, and passe forth through the mylke into the chylde, making the chylde of lyke condition & maners: also that they be not ouer lyght and wanton of behauour. Fyfthly that her brestes be ful and haue sufficient plentie of mylke: & that they be neither to great, softe, hanginge, and flagging: ne to lyttle, harde, or contract, but of a measurable quantite.

To chose a good nourse.

¶ Also loke vpō her mylke, that it be not blackyshe, blueyshe, greye, or reddyshe, neyther sowre, sharpe, saltyshe, or brackyshe, neyther thyn and fluye, neyther ouer grosse and thycke: but temperatly whyte & pleasant in taste: & to be shorte: that mylke is beste

The consideration of the nourses mylke.

beſt and moſt to be choſen of the whyche a droppe beyng mylked ſoftely on the nayle of the thombe holding your finger ſtyll, it rolleth not of, nether ſlytteth abroade, but yf ye moue your hand a lyttle it wyl ſlyde of by and by: but yf when it is mylked on the nayle it ſpred abroade, and ſlytte by & by, then is it to thyn: but yf it cleaue ſtyll when that ye moue a lyttle your hand, the is it to ſpyſſe & thicke, the meane betwene both is beſte.

¶ Yf it be ſo that the nourſes mylke be to hote, ſharpe, or colerycke, then let her neuer geue the chylde ſucke, her ſelfe beinge faſtynge.

Dyuers cauſes of ỹ defect or fayling of mylke.

¶ Sometyme it chaunceth, that the mothers or nources mylke doeth fayle or decreaſe, the whych thing maye come by dyuers cauſes: as by ſyckeneſſe, by dyſeaſe in the breſtes, or by takyng of colde in the ſame, and ſo ſtoppe and cludder the milke: or for bycauſe ſhe lacketh ſoche thynges, the whych myghte engendre mylke: other by ouer moche faſtynge, hungre & thurſte: the whyche cauſes muſte be well conſydered, and then accordynge to that myniſter a remedy.

¶ Thinges whych do augment and encreaſe mylcke, be thoſe: let her vſe to eate

parſenyp

parsenyp, eyther the sede or the roote. Also the sede or rote of fenel soden in the broth made with barley or cicercula: let her eate of that with other meates that she fedeth on. Item to eate shepes brestes & the milke of them is good. Item take an ounce of cow butter, & dissolue it in warme whyte wine the which let the nource drincke. Item boringe vnder the brestes, doth well without scarification.

¶ Item a plaster for the same of frankencense, masticke, & pitch layd to the brestes or vnder the brestes, the skyn fyrst beynge anoynted with oyle, least it shuld cleaue ouer fast to the place.

¶ Item it shalbe very good to rubbe softely wyth the hande the brestes, or elles in bathyng after dyner or supper, to cause some to sucke her breste.

¶ Item take the oyle of whyte lyllies or of violettes, & myngle with it muske, encense & laudanum wel tempered together: in the same dyppe a pece of wooll, & clappe it to the brestes, and soke them with it.

¶ Item washe them, & soke them often tymes with wyne, in the which is decocte and sodden myntes, rooses, violettes, and xiloaloes. Also to eate of the broath in the which is soden a henne, wyth cynamome,

maces,

maces, and cardamomū, & also the youlke of an egge.

¶ Item it is good for her to eate fresshe chese and mylke, and to refrayne from all maner of great labour and hard workes. Also potage made of beane meale, ryse, & bread made of fyne flowre, tempered wyth mylke and sugre, putting to it also a quantite of fenell seede or of the leaues, is very good for her.

¶ Itē take of annis sede, of syler montanū of eche. iii. drams, of christall beaten to powdre. ii. drams, & a cnoch of sugre, geue her this to drinke aboute. x. dayes at morenyng, euenyng, & myddaye.

¶ Itē take of fenel seede or the leaues, & of horehoūd of eche. ii. hādfulles, of annis sede. iiii. drams, of safran beaten. i. scruple also of fresshe butter. iii. ounces, & seeth all these in sufficient water, making thereof a plaster, and the same plaster whyles it is hoote, laye it to the nources breste.

¶ Item take of cōmyn sede an ounce and an half, & of clarified hony. iii. ounces: seeth it in. v. pintes of water al together put in to a newe pot, and let it seeth to the thyrd part: & of this decoction geue the nourse of tentymes to drincke.

¶ Item take of beetes well washed one

ounce

ounce, of cūmyn halfe an ounce, of hony. vi ounces: of these myngled & tempered toge ther, make an electuarye, of the which let her take both in the mornīng and euening at eche tyme a sponefull.

¶Item take two drams of crystall beaten into fine powdre, & deuyde that in.iiii. equal partes, one of these partes geue vnto the nourse the space of fowre dayes too drinke, with broth made either of cicer, or els of peason.

¶Also all those thinges folowinge encrease and augment mylke in the brestes: annys and annis seede, dyll and the seede, horehounde, cardomome, freshe chese, wortes made of olde chese, cicer, cristall, beatē to powdre and taken wyth honye: lettuse, fenell, wyne, in whych rosemary or sauery be soden.

¶Itē to abstayne frō venery or mans cōpany: for yf the vse that, it shal spend & consume the mylke & make it vnsauery & vnholsome: nether can the chylde wel broke it, but most cōmenly shal cast it vp agayne because it can not digest it.

Companyinge wythmē corrupteth the nources mylke.

¶Also it shalbe best that the chyld sucke not of the mothers brest by and by as sone as it is borne: but rather of some other wa mans for a daye or two, for because that

the creme (as thei cal it) streight after the byrthe the fyrste daye in all women doeth thycken and congyle.

¶ Item yf it chaunce that the nourse be ouer sore lared, or that she be ouer bounde, so that she take any medycynes to remedy it, then let another geue thee chylde sucke whyleste she be recouered agayne. And whē the chylde is layde in cradell to be rocked rocke not to fast, leaste throughe ouer moch rockinge and styrrynge, the chyldes stommacke turne and the mylke there corrupt for lacke of reste.

How long the chyld shuld sucke

¶ Auicen auiseth to geue the chyld sucke two yeres, how be it amonge vs moste commonly they sucke but one yeare. And whē ye wyl wene them, then do it not sodenly, but a lyttle and lyttle: and to make for it lyttle pylles of bread & sugre to eate, & accustome it so, tyll it be able to eate al maner of meate: and this shall suffyce for the education and bringing vp of infantes at this tyme: not withstanding dyuers other thinges here are left unspoken of, another tyme God wyllyng we shall declare them at large.

¶ Of diuers diseases and infirmities which chaūce to chyldren lately borne: and the remedies therefore. ¶ Capit. iii.

All

Many diseases of infantes.

ALthough there be in maner infinite diseases which happē to infantes, as wryteth Hypocrates, Galenus, Rasis, Auicenna and diuers other: yet for breuite and shortnesse we wyll rehearse here only soch of them, whych most commonly happen to the same, and that be those: Exulceration of the gummes: flyxe of the belly or ouer moch loosenes of the same: the belly hard bounde: the crampe: the coughe & distillation of the head, short wyndnes: bladders on the tongue: exulceration or clyppyng of the mouth: apostume in the eares: apostume in the brayne: swelling and bolning of the eyes, skum or creme of ỹ eyes, the feuer, knawyng in the belly, the bodye swellinge and pusted vp, often sneesynge: whelkes or bladders on ỹ body: swellinge of the coddes, swellinge of the nauell: vnslepynesse, perynge: appetyte to parbrake, fearefulnesse in the dreames, the mother, yssuynge out of the fundamēt gut, wormes in the belly, chaufyng, the falling sickenes, the consumpyon: the palsye: trymblynge of the partes of the bodye, thee stone, gogell eyes.

HOwe to cure and to remedy al these, nowe wyll I shewe in order.

Of exulceration of ỹ gummes.

¶ Fyrst in exulceration of the gummes are wont certayne pusshes and as it were wheales to growe on the gummes or in ỹ corners of the iawes, the which putte the place to moche greuaunce: and to remedye this, it shalbe good that ye with your finger rubbe the infantes gummes & the pusshes or wheikes withal, & then to anoynt the same gummes with oyntmēt made of hennes grese, heyres or conies brayne: oile of camomell mirte wyth honye: then take water, and in it seeth camomell and dyll, the whych water being hoate, powre it on the chyldes head, holdinge it a fote aboue the head.

¶ Of the flyxe and ouermoch loosenes of the bellye.

For the flix in chyldren

¶ For this take the sede of roses, cōmyn, annyse and the sede of smallage: beate all those together & make them plasterwise & laye it to the chyldes belly.

¶ And farther yf that it which the infant voydeth be of redde or yelowe colour, then geue it to drinke of the syrope of roses, or of crabbes, other elles of pomegranates, tempered with a lyttle mynte water.

¶ Item take the sede of sorrell, and beate it, thē tempre it together with the poulke of a rosted egge, & geue that to the chylde

to

to eate: or elles take of the same sede brused fyrst: & then seeth it in fayre runninge water, therof let the chyld drinke .ii. or .iii tymes the daye.

¶ Item take a galle, & beate it to powdre then seeth it in water with this water, & per barley meale, or the meale of millii, & make a plaster of it, the whych laye vnto the chyldes belly.

¶ Item yf that, that cometh frō the chyld be whytishe, then take of nutmegges thee weyght of a peny, & of whyte frankēcense a scruple, or the weyght of .ii. pens, & whyche tempre with the iuyce of a quince, & geue it to the chylde to drincke.

¶ Item take the meale of barley, temper it with the iuyce of plantayne & a lyttle vinegre, & make it playsterwyse, & laye it to the chyldes belly, but beyng fyrst a lyttle boyled together ouer the fyre.

¶ Item take the iuyce of centinodium & the whyte of an egge: & tempre them together, to the which adde the powdre of dried red roses, the powdre of hematites, mastick, frankencense, bole armeniake, sanguis draconis, & thee rindes of pomegranate: of all these mixed togeather make a plaster: and laye it (fyrst warmed ouer the fyre) to the infantes belly.

¶ Item to washe the chylde with the water in ẏ which be soden leaues of red roses is very good. Item take the iuyce of camfely & the iuyce of plantayne the more and the lesse, & in this put claye of an olde furnyse or ouen, and make of it a plaster, and laye it to the chyldes bellye.

¶ To vnloose the chyld beynge bounde.

¶ Yf the chyld be so boūd, that it can not longe tyme haue any stole, thē make a suppositary of hony soden tyll it be harde and massye, and lette the suppositary be of thē length of your little finger, & the bignesse of two wheat strawes bound together, thē dyp it into oyle and conuey it into the childes fundament.

¶ Item lykewyse ye may make a suppositar of the stalke & the rote of beates, or els of ẏ rote called oresse or flowre deluce rote, made of thee quantite before spoken, and conueyed into thee syttynge place of thee chylde.

¶ Item to geue to thē infant as moch hony as a pease to drinke & to rubbe ẏ bellye a lyttle, & to souple it with a pece of wool dypped in oyle: or dypped in bulles galle, and layde to the nauel, Item ye may geue vnto the nource a medycyne whyche hath

vertue

vertue to vnbynd and loose, & the next day after let the chylde sucke her, and it wyll loose also the chyld.

¶ Item take of small mallowes, of great mallowes of eche an hãdful, of fenegreke and lynsed of eche an ounce, of holyoke. ii. ounces, of fygges the number of .x. seeth al these together in water: & then stampe thē in a morter, & put vnto it of butter and of hennes grease of eche .ii. ounces, & of safra one scruple, & make a plaster of it vpon a lynnen cloth of the thickenes of a strawe, and laye it to the chyldes belly, a day and a nyght.

¶ Yf this moue not the belly, then take of aloes cycotryne .i. dram, of elleborus both niger and albus of eche .xv. graynes: beate these to powder, then tẽper thē with thre spoonefulles of the iuyce of walwoorte or of oxe gall, in this lycoure dyppe wooll, and laye it to the nauell the bredthe of a hand and bynd it to the place.

¶ Item take the iuyce of walwoorte and of myl meale and seeth thole together, tyl they be thycke, then make a plaster therof and laye it to the belly beneth the nauell.

¶ A remedy for the crampe or distention of the membres.

¶ Yf it chaunce that the infant be taken

with the disease, called ye crampe, the whi che for the most part cometh of indigestiō & of the weakenes of the powre attractyue, & specially in soch chyldren the whych be very fat & moyst, then shal ye annoynte al alonge the backe of the infant wyth the oyle of blewe flowre delyce, or els whyte lyllyes, ether the oyle of rue.

¶ Yf the crampe take the chyld whylest it stretcheth forth the armes, legges, and other membres (as we be wont in gaping or yayning) then let it be bathed and wasshed in water, in the whych pryme roses, cowssyppes, or the flowres of camomell be soden: or els annoynt it with the oyle of violettes, and the oyle of swete almons tempered together: & yf the chyld be in greate heate, annoynte hym with the oyle of violettes, or wyth oyle olyfe, tēpered wyth a lyttle whyte wexe, and also powre on the chyldes head the oyle of violettes.

¶ Remedye for the coughe & distillation or catarrhes of the head.

¶ Sometymes the chyld is sore encombred with the coughe and with distillatiō or runninge of humoures out of the head, to the noose, the mouth, and the breste: the whych ye shall remedye thus: First powre warme

warme water on the childes head holding it a fote & a half frō the chyldes head, & so do continually the space of halfe an houre and in the meane whyle put a lyttle hony on the chyldes tonge to chaw vpō: thē put your finger into the chyldes mouth, & depreſſe or holde downe the inner moſt parte of the rote of the tonge nerte to the throte, to prouoke the chyld to vomyte, & to voyde the groſſe & viſcouſe humoures whych be cauſe of thys yll.

¶ Item take gumme arabicke, gumme dragagant, the ſeede of quinces, the iuyce of lycoryſe, & ſugre penedium: al thys beaten together, geue euery day to the child a quantite with milke newe mylked. Item make almond mylke with almondes blāched and onely the iuyce or water of fenel wherof when it is wel ſoden, let the child eate or drinke morning & eueninge or any other tyme of the daye.

¶ And yf it be ſo that the cough haue exaſperat and made rough the tongue & the rofe of the mouth, then take of the ſeedes of quinces .ii. ſponefulles: bruſe thē a lyttle & ſtype them in warme water the ſpace of two or thre houres, thē ſtrayne the viſcouſe and groſſe water frō thē throughe a ſtrayner: and that remayneth, frye it toge-

ther

ther in a frying panne with sugre penidium, & the oyle of swete almons, therof making an electuarium, the whych geue vnto the chyld to receaue, yf the chylde haue great heate with the cough, then adde vn to the same electuary, the iuyce of a swete pomegranate.

¶Item agaynst the cough & ouer moch heate, take the seede of white poppye & dragagant of eche two drams: of the sedes of Gowardes. iiii. drams, & beate al these to gether: & geue at once the weyght of. iiii. d to the chyld wyth the water in which reysons haue bene soden.

¶Item take reysons, and doyng awaye the graynes of it: seeth thē together wyth water in a frying pāne, so that they burne not to the botome of the pane: thē take it from the fyre and beate it wel in a morter temperynge ther with al sugre penidium, and geue of this in the morninge and euenynge to the chylde.

¶Agayne yf the coughe come of a colde cause: then take a lytle myrthe beaten to powdre, and tempre it wyth a quantite of warmed hony & the oyle of swete almondes, and of thys geue vnto the chylde.

¶Farthermore the nourse must auoyde al soch thynges the which may engendre coughe

cough: as vinegre, ouermoch salted meats chese, nuttes, & al sharpe thinges. Also she muste annoynt the chyldes brest with butter and wyth dialthea.

¶ Item for the coughe: take reysons and frye them in a fryinge panne, then stampe them in a morter, & to that adde as moche of sugre penidiū, with a little oyle of violettes, and make an electuarye of these, & geue to the chylde thee mountenaunce of a hasell nutte.

¶ Remedy for shorte wynde.

¶ Many tymes chaūceth also to infantes difficultie of brething or shorte wyndnes, the which to remedy: take lynesede, & beat it, and geue of it vnto the child with hony but yf the dysease encrease on the chyld, & that the wynd pypes in maner seme stopped, then annoynt wyl the eares, & all the places about the eares wyth oyle olyfe, & also the tongue for to prouoke vomyte, & then powre a lytle warme water into the chyldes mouth to washe it withal: & geue to it a lyttle lynesede tempered with hony and beaten, made after thee fasshion of an electuarye.

¶ Item yf the chylde haue besydes this also the flyxe: then geue vnto it thee syrope

of

of myrtyls, other elles dates soden wyth mylke, and flowre.

¶ Agaynst wheales or bladders on the tongue.

¶ Item somtymes happeneth to the chyldren wheales & blysters on theyr tonges and mouth, whych thinges cometh of the sharpenesse and aegrenesse of the nources mylke: the mouth and tonge of the infant beynge so tender that the least thyng that toucheth it, shall offende it: wherefore besydes that it is great payne to the chylde thus to be blystered by the egrenesse of the mylke, it is also very perylous and daungerous: for soch wheales which be not rype and seme blacke, betoken death, whych yf they be whyte or yelowysh, then they be of lesse parell.

¶ Agaynst this yll: take violettes & roses and seeth them in a lyttle rose water, and ther with washe the blysters.

¶ Item take the iuyce of letuse, the iuyce of petie morell, & the iuyce of purcelayne, which whē they be wel commyxt & tempered together, anoynt therwith ỹ wheles And yf the forsayde blysters or wheles be blackish, then adde to the forsayd iuyces lycorysse beaten to powdre.

¶ Item yf the same be very moyste, then take myrrhe, galles, the ryne of frankencense:

renſe: beate them wel together, and tempre them with hony, and annoynt the chyldes tongue there wyth.

¶ Item take the iuyce of mulberies before they be fully rype, other els of vnripe grapes, which is called vergeus, & with that annoynt the tonge. Item it is very good to waſhe the tonge with red wyne, & then to ſtrewe vpon it the powdre of galles, or els of the barke or rynde of frankencenſe.

¶ Yf ye wyl haue a quicker medicine in operatiõ & ſharper: then take bole armeniake, pſidiũ, & ſumach of eche. iii. drams: alſo of galles. ii. drams, of alome. i. dram: al theſe beate together & ſearche thẽ thrꝛough a ſearcher, and ſtrewe that powdre on the blyſters. Item yf theſe wheales be reddiſh and cauſe moch ſpyttle to gather together in that place, then let the nourſe vſe ſoche thinges which are moyſt and cold, and let her chawe in her mouth very ſmal a fewe fatches, of the whych lay on the infantes mouth and tongue.

¶ Item amilum or ſtarche tẽpered together with roſe water, & put on the childes tonge, is good. Item take the iuyce of pome granates, ỹ iuyce of quynces, or the iuyce of oꝛanges, and doo of this on the chyldes tonge in lyke maner: but yf the wheles or

blyſters

blysters be somewhat yelowissh, then to these iuyces spokē of before adde the iuyce of lettuse and of purcelayne. But yf thee wheales seme whytysh: then take of myrre and of saffrane, of eche one dram, of sugre candy two drams, and beate these too powder and laye of it on the wheales and the tongue.

¶ Of exulceration or clefture, chappinge or chynynge of the mouthe.

¶ Somtymes by reason of the hardnes of the nources pappes, the chyldes lyppes & mouth be exulcerate hauinge in manner of clefte & chimes in the: & in this tase take tozed wooll, & dyp it in the iuyce of plantayne, or elȝ in butter molten, or in freshe hennes grease euery of the beinge warme, and with this anoynt the mouth & lippes of the chyld.

¶ Of apostumation and running of the eares.

¶ When that humours & matter yssueth out of the eares which properly commeth of abundant humours in al the body, and most specially in the head, the take a pece of wooll, & dyp it in hony mixt with redde wyne, to the which is put also a lytle quantite of aloine beate to powdre, or of safran then make of the same as it were a tent, & put it in the chyldes eare: & when the tent

hath

hath sucked & drawē to it the humoure & fylthines of the eare, thē take it out, & put in new, & yf that, the which cometh out of the eare be as matter, thē take of sodē hony & tēpered with water, put of it into the eares, or els take the powdre of galles tē pering it wyth vynegre and do lykewyse.

¶But yf the chylde haue great payne & doloure by wyndnesse, ventosyte & the humours in this place, then seeth organnye or myrrhe with oyle olyfe & so being warme put of it into the eares.

¶Of apostumation in the head.

¶Yf there be any apostume engendered in the head (which many times chaūceth) the which causeth the chekes & eyes to be greatly payned, and the eye syght to ware wannisshe or tawnye, then must be applied soch thinges which maye refrigerate and coole the braynes: as take of thee iuyce of gowardes & the iuyce of nightshade, iuyce of purcelayne, & temper thē with the oyle of roses, in this dyp a yece of wool & laye it to the head, & as oftē as it wareth drye, dyp it agayne.

¶Of the swelling or bolning of the eyes:

¶Agaynst swellynge & bolnynge of the eyes:

eyes: take licium, and tempre it wyth womans mylke, and put of it into the childes eye, and bynd it to the place with a fyne & softe lynnen cloth: then afterwarde washe the eyes with water in whiche camomell and basyl haue bene soden. Yf that in this swellynge the eyes be not redde, nether the browes swollen, then take myrrhe, aloes, saffran, and the leaues of roses, and tēper all these, and stype them in olde wine: and bynde it too the chyldes eyes wyth some lynnen cloth, & into thee chyldes nose put a quantite of ambre dissolued in womans mylke.

¶ Of the scumme or whyte of the eye.

¶ Agaynst the scum or whyte of the eye whych for the most part happeneth to chil drē through ouer moch cryeng & weppyng: take the iuyce of solatrum, & droppe of the same into the childes eye: and yf by the same chaunce the vayne of the eyes were red dysh, or be swollen, then annoynt thē with the same iuyce.

¶ Agaynst immoderate heate or the feuer.

¶ Yf the infant be in great and vehement heate contrary to nature, the which is called a feuer. Fyrste it shall be the nources

part

part to eate & vse soch thinges the which coole & moysten. Also to geue vnto the infant of these thinges folowinge: the iuyce of pomegranate, the water of gourdes, sugre with a lytle camphere myred here w all, tempered wel together. Itē it is very good to prouoke it to sweatinge.

¶ Item take of the iuyce of wormewood of plantayne, malowes, and syngrene, and tēpre them al together & seeth thē a lyttle on the fyre: in the which also mixte barlye meale, & make a plaster of al these, & laye it to the childes brest. Itē take the oyle of roses & the oyle of poplar, & mixt thē together, w this oyntmēt beyng cold, annoynt the childes forehead, the tēples, the armes the hādes about the wrystes & the pulces, and the feete about the ancles. Itē take of barlye meale & of dryed roses & poudered, and tēpre these with the water of roses & the water of endyue, & make therof on the fyre a plaster, the whych laye to the childes brest somewhat warme.

¶ Also as often as the chyld is washed, let it be done w water in whyche is soden soch thinges which coole, as letuce, purcelayne, endyue, plantayne, and soch other.

¶ Agaynst kretynge or knawynge in the bellye.

¶ Yf the chyld be vexed with frettinge & knawing in the belly the which thyng ye shal know by the immoderat crying of the chyld, and that it turneth from one syde to another with great cryinge, then shal you take warme water wherin hath ben sodē lauander, cummyne, fenel sede, or the sede of dyll and oyle olyke, tempering them together, and herein dyppe a piece of woolt, and therwith soke the chyldes belly often tymes.

¶ Agaynst swelling of the body.

¶ Whē the chyldes body or any part ther of is swollen and puffed vp, then take the toppes of elder tree, and of walwort: and seeth them in whyte wyne, and therin lap the infant, specially yf it be not taken wyth ouer greate heate, but yf so be that wyth swelling in the head the belly be swollen also, then take myrrhe, aloes epatike, and saffran, and beate them al togeather & temper them with the iuyce of beanes and lay it to the chyldes head.

¶ Agaynst often sneesynge.

¶ Sometymes the infantes be sore troubled and vexed wyth often sternutation & sneesynge, whych thynge yf it come of the apostume

apostume in the head: thē shall ye minister soch thinges to the head whyche refrigerate & coole, whether it be oyles, oyntmentes, iuyces of the herbes or other thinges. Yf this come of any other cause then of apostume, thē take basyl, be it grene or drye and putte of the iuyce or powder of it into the childes nose: but yf this sneesing come and begyn with heate, & that the chyldes eyes seme as they grew inward for payne therof: then laye to the chyldes head thee leaues of purcelayne, or gowarde cutte in thyn slyses and tempered wyth the oyle of roses and barlye meale, & also the youlke of an egge.

¶ Of whelkes in the body and the cure.

¶ These whelkes yf they appeare black vpō the body, they sygnifye parel of lyfe, & so moch the more the greater quātite that there is of them, but yf they seme whytish or reddyshe, it is no parell, and maye easelye be cured: wherefore take the leaues of the red rose, the leaues of myrtyls, and of tamariscus, and seeth these in water & in that water wette a lynnen cloth, and soke therewith the whelkes.

¶ Itē lykewyse it is good to annoynt the same with the oyle of roses, of myrtylles,

and tamariscus. Yf the whelkes be white or reddisshe, then let them, be ripe, before ye minister any thing to them, and whē they be open & begyn to matterye, thē to clense, puryfye, and to drye them beyng rype and broken it is very good to washe the same whelkes wyth mulsum or hydromell, in whyche salte peter is dissolued. Mulsum and hydromell is water and honye soden together.

¶ Agaynst swellynge of the coddes

¶ Many tymes chaūceth to chyldrē (thorowe ouer moch cryinge) swellynge about the coddes, and sometymes burstenes and swelling in the inner part of the thighes: the which swelling sometimes cometh by inflāmation or great heate: and sometyme with onely wyndynesse: yf it come of wyndynesse, then the coddes wyll sometymes appeare so stiffe as a tabour, and shyne as it were an horne, the remedy for this is to take a quart of double bierewort, & therin seeth of the leaues of hey half a handful, of rue a quarter of an handefull, of fenell, dyll, and camomell of eche a meane handful: cut and brose al these herbes together and seeth them frō the quarte to the pynte: then strayne theym strongely from the ly-

quer

quer in the whyche lyquer seeth so moche beane flowre as may serue to make a plaster, therto adding at the latter ende. ii. or iii. sponefulles of oyle of camomel, & laye this plaster hote to the coddes: yf the swelling come of heat, thē alay the same with some colde herbes soch as I haue oftentymes spoken of before.

¶ Agaynst swelling of the nauell.

¶ Also somtymes the childes nauel swelleth, and specially streyte after the byrthe when it is cut: for this take spyke celtyke and seeth it in the oile of almondes mixed with a lyttle turpentyne: then in this dip wool, and laye it on the place.

¶ But yf so be that this swellyng come of ouermoch cryinge, coughe, or of a stroke or fall: then take bytter luppynes and thee powdre of fayre olde lynnen clothe burnte to powdre, & temper these with red wyne, and then in this dyppe a pece of towe, and laye it to the nauel.

¶ Agaynst vnlepynesse.

¶ Agaynst vnlepynesse, that is, when the chyld is destitute & wanteth his due & natural reste, al the whyle crying & weping for this take two heades wyth the seedes

therein contayned of whyte poppye: and with one sponefull of rose water, and thre or.iiii. droppes of vinegre stampe them in a morter reasonably: then adde there to.ii. sponefuls of womās mylke, & the weyght of an halfe penye of saffran, wyth halfe a sponefull of barley flowre: the whyche yet stampe a lyttle together agayne and then laye it in a fyne or thyn double lynnē cloth and applye it to the forehed from one temple to the other. Item geue the chylde to drinke a lyttle of the syrope of popie. Also to annoynte the temples wyth the oyle of popie is very good.

¶ But yf thys vnclenesse come of the impurite and ylnes of the nourles mylke (as many tymes it doeth) then take of the oyle of violettes, and put vnto it a lyttle quantitie of vynegre, and of thys lycoure drop often tymes into the childes nosetrilles: or elles take the oyle of roses, & tempre it wyth the iuyce of letuce, & therwith annoynte the head and stomacke of the chyld and farther see that the nourses mylke be amended.

¶ Agaynst yexinge or the hychate.

¶ This yexinge cometh ether of coldnes of the stomacke, other els of ouermoch fulnesse,

neſſe, or for lacke of meate and emptyneſſe of the ſtomacke, or els by ſome hoate & colerycke qualitie bytinge vpon the mouth of the ſtomacke.

¶As often as it cometh by the abundāce of meate and fulnes, the remedye is to prouoke it to vompte, yf by coldnes of the ſtomacke, then annoynte the ſtomacke wyth the oyle of bayes warmed, other elles lay to the ſtomacke a plaſter made of the ſede of dyl beaten and tempered with the iuyce of myntes.

¶But yf it chaunce by any heate or colleryeke qualite: then take the oyle of violettes, or of roſes, ỹ iuyce of endyue, or of any other ſuch herbes, the whych haue power to infrigidate & coole, and temper the ſame with womās mylke, & annoynt therwith the chyldes ſtomacke.

¶And when it procedeth by defecte and lacke of meat or emptines of the ſtomack: then geue to the chyld to feade vpō mylke and other good and holeſome thinges too ſuppe, nether paſſe not greatly, though the chyld reiecte and vomyte vp agayne that the whyche it receaueth: for ſo moch euer wyll remayne in the ſtomacke that ſhalbe ſufficient to ſuſtayne it and meanely to noriſhe it.

¶ Agaynst often parbraking by weakenes & feblenesse of the stomacke.

¶Agaynst ouer moch parbraking, beate iiii. graynes of cloues, and geue it to the chylde to drinke with. iiii. oz. v. sponefuls of redde wyne. Item take of mastycke, whyte frankencense, and the leaues of the redde rose, so moche as shalbe sufficient: & all these beatē together, tempre thē wyth the iuyce of myntes, and make a plaster of it, layinge it to the chyldes stomacke: but yf the chyldes vomiting be very vehemēt, thē put vnto these forsayd thinges a quātite of rose vinegre.

¶Item take fyne meale, and bake it so hote in an ouen or els in a frying panne ouer the fyre, tyll it waxe browne, thē beate it to powdre agayne, putting it into vinegre: & to these adde the powlke of an egge hard rosted, masticke, frankēcense, & gūme arabicke, & tempre al these with the iuyce of myntes, making of it a plaster the whiche laye to the chyldes stomacke, & to the chyldes mouth & nose hold a warme toste of bread.

¶Causes of this yll be. iii. the fyrste, yf the child haue taken more mylke thē it is able to concocte & digeste: The seconde, yf the nourses mylke be ouer thyn, waterish and

and fluyshe: The thyrd, yf the same mylke be impure feculent & corrupt: these causes prouoke vomite, & specially yf the chylde also haue a weake & wateriſhe ſtomacke, wherfore ye muſte helpe the infante after this maner: Fyrſt let the chyld ſucke leſſe then it dyd before, & then alſo marke that, which the child doeth parbrake, whether it ſauer ſharpely lyke vineger: or that it be whytyſhe: for yf it be ſo, thē take of white frankencenſe. viii. greynes, of dryed rue. xx graynes: beate theſe too powdre, & geue it to the chylde to drinke, with the ſyrope of redde rooſes.

¶ Or els let the nourſe chawe cummyn, and ſo put it into the chyldes mouth: geue alſo of the ſyrope of pomegranates, wyth the powdre of drye myntes to the chyld.

¶ Take maſticke, accatia, rioaloes, galles, whyte frankēcenſe, toſted bread, of ech lyke moch: beate them together puttynge to of redde rooſes, and tempering it wyth the cōſerue of roſes, and laye it to the chil des ſtomacke.

¶ But yf it ſo be that the parbraking of the chylde ſauer not after the faſhion of vi neger, but after ſome other ſowre ſauer, & that it be not whitiſhe, but pale or yelowyſhe: then geue it the iuyce of quinces, and

lay

laye this plaster vnto the childes stomack take barlye meale, wylde mulberyes, and plidium: beate al these together, & tempre it with roose water, and laye it to the childes stomacke.

¶ And farthermore yf the childes stomack be somewhat waterishe and slowe in digestion, thē annoint it with the water of roses, in the which muske hath bē dyssolued or elles the water of myrtylles, and geue it to drincke the iuyce of quynces wyth a lyttle cloues and sugre, or wyth a scruple of nutte megges, therewith tempered and myxed.

¶ Agaynst fearefull and terrible dreames.

¶ Also sometyme the chyldren be vexed and vnquyeted wyth fearefull and terryble dreames in theyr slepe, whych thynge for the most parte cometh of the abundāce of fode, and ouer moch meate or drinckes, whych for the coppe and superfluyte thereof can not be conuicte ne ouer come of nature, wherefore necessarely it putrifieth & corrupteth, the noysume and hydious vapours wherof flying vp to the head in tyme of slepe, causeth this terryble fantasies in the slepe. And thus may it be remedyed: Fyrst take hede that ye laye not the chyld

to

to slepe streyght after it hath fedde, and al so let it lycke a lyttle honye swalowynge it downe, so that by it soche thynges thee whych be somewhat harde to digeste and concocte, maye the soner be dygested, & the refuce the more easely to descend into the guttes.

¶ Itē euery day geue to the infant halfe a dram of the electuary, called diamuscum or diapliris. Also triacle in this case is very good takē with mylke, as sayth Rasis.

¶ Agaynst ysshuing forth of the fundament gut.

¶ For the ysshuing forth of this gut, whē the thyld laboreth to ease it self: take myrtyls, acorne cuppes, red roses dried, burnt hartes hornes, burnt alome, gotes howfe, balaustium, and gaules, of eche like moch and seeth al these together with water so long tyl the water haue receaued the strēgthe of the ingrediēce, & with this water beynge warme, washe the gut, and so conuaye it into the body agayne as I taught you in the seconde boke.

¶ Agaynst Tenasmus.

¶ Tenasmus is a disease when the thylde enforseth it selfe to stoole, and yet can doo nothynge: the whyche thynge oftentymes chaun-

chaunceth to chyldren, most commenly proceading of cold, agaynst the which ye shal vse these remedyes: take garden cresses, & cummyn sede of eche lyke moche, beate thē together and temper them with olde butter, & geue it to drincke to the child wyth colde water.

¶ Item take turpentyne and lay of it vpō coales, whose fume let the chylde receaue beneth in the fundament, the fume beynge inclosed rounde about with clothes. Item take tarre, and lykewyse make fume of it receauing the fume as before.

¶ Agaynst wormes in the belly.

¶ Sometymes there brede wormes in the guttes of the byggenesse & quantite of soch as are wont to be in olde chese, called mytes, & some like lyce: & sometime in the belly be engendred wormes of the byggenes of earthwormes, called easis: against these vse this remedye: take thee water of centumnodia, and geue it to the chylde to drynke wyth mylke.

¶ Item take of white coral, the scraping of yuery, of hartes horne burnt, & of pyeos of eche a scruple, of sugre candye. i. ounce and an halfe, of the water of centumnodia so moch as shalbe sufficient to temper all

these

these thynges before, & of this make suppositaries, mynistring to the childe euery daye the wayght of two drams.

¶Otherwise according to Rasis mynd, take of cummyne sede as moch as shall be sufficient, & tempre it with ore gaule, makinge thereof a plaster, the which ye shall laye to the infantes nauel.

¶Item oyle olyfe taken and dronken a small quantite therof is very good to kyl all maner of wormes whych brede in the gutte, nere to the fundament: take the fynest cotten, & thereof make suppositaries, the whych ye shal annoynte wyth the oyle of wormewood or of rue, or of the kernels of peches, or the oyle of bytter almondes, and so to conuaye it into the chyldes syttynge place.

¶Itē it shal greatly profyt the chyld yf it be washed in ỹ water, in which is soden wormewood and the leaues of peches.

¶Item an oyntmente for the same: take of wormewood & of lupines, of eche twoo drams of siler montanum, cūmyne, cockle centory, and centonicum, & of hertes horne burnte, of eche. iiii. drams: all these thynges beaten togeather, tempre them in the oyle of wormwood, or of bytter almōs the weyght of. ii. ounces: puttynge to it fowre

drams

drams weyght of ware: and make hereof an oyntment and annoynt the chyldes belye therwith by the fyre or in some warme place.

¶Item take of cockle.ii.drams, of wormewoode and mastycke of eche one dram, of aloes, redde corall of eche.ii.drams, of coriander preparat.vi.drams: beate al these well togeather: adde also to these of rye meale three ounces, of luppynes beaten too powdre.vi.drams, of saffran two drams: tempre all these in two ounces of the iuyce of rue, or of the oyle of rue, and fowre ounces of the iuyce of wormewood, or of thee oyle of the same, and make hereof a plaster and laye it vnto thee chyldes nauell thee bredthe of a hand.

¶Item geue the chylde the wayghte of iiii.pens of the powdre of aloes cycotrine with fayre water fyrste sodden and sweted wyth sugre, or elles with single biere: and this no doubt is souerayne.

¶Item agaynst the great and long wormes: take of the iuyce of wormewood, and of ore galle, of bothe two ounces, of colocinthis.viii.drams, tempre all these well together adding to it a lytle whete meale and make hereof a plaster, the which laye to the nauel of the chylde. Item a bath for the

the same, take wormewood and gaules, & seeth them in water, lette chyld be bathed vp to the nauell.

¶ Of chaufinge or gallinge in any place of the bodye.

¶ Agaynst gallinge or chaufinge of the chyldes skyn, by reason of the acrimony & sharpenes of vryne or swette, take mirtils and beate them to pouder, and strewe ther of on the place. Item take of Iryos, of the redde rose, of cyperus, of tragacantum, so moch as shalbe thought sufficient, & beate them all, or parte of them, & strewe of the powdre on the chafed place.

¶ Itē take of the oyle of roses one ounce, of whyte frankencense. i. dram, and melte these together, and thē take. viii. graynes of camphere dyssolued in roose water and mixt there wal, & oval this make an oynt mēt, & annoynt the chafed place ther with all. Also vnguentum album and vnguentum rubeum be good for thys purpose.

¶ Item the decoction and fomentation with the water wherin plantayne, knotte gras, docke rootes or bursa pastoris is sodē is very good for the same.

¶ Of the fallynge syckenesse.

¶ Some

¶ Sometymes these infantes be vexed & encombred with the falling sickenes: and that twoo maner of wayes, one is that it hath this disease streyt forth with ỹ birth Cause of the which is colde & yll humors in the head & braynes: another is, that it taketh this infirmitie after thee byrth by some accidentall causes, in whych case yf it leaue not the chyld beyng a man chylde before he be. xxv. yeare of age, & the womã chyld about the tyme of hauing her fyrste flowres, yf it forsake thē not in this space nether by the myght of nature, neyther of medicines, then is it lyke neuer to depart from them.

¶ Agayne yf thys dysease come not by nature but by some accydentall cause afterwarde, then geue dylygente hede, that the nourses mylke be very good, & cōueniente to ỹ childes nature. And for the same purpose yf necessitie require it, shall be verye good to purge & clense thee nourses bodye with due & mete medycines: & she muste auoyde al soch thinges the whych do coole and moysten: & to sustre the child to receaue no more mylcke at once then it maye be able well to digeste.

¶ Agaynst thys cruell dysease auctors moch commend the rote of a pyonye, onely

hanged

hanged about the chyldes necke.
Item the same roote dryed and beaten to powder, and so often tymes geuen to the chylde to take, sometymes wyth dryncke, sometimes with potage, pappe, or milke, or any other wayes: lykewyse the seede of pyonye is very good.
¶ Farthermore powre nowe and then into the chyldes nosetrelles of oyle of castorium, or the oyle of costus, or of euforbiū: Also let the chyld smell to rue, and to asafetida. Item to hange viscum quercinum wyth is gathered in Marche the moone decreasynge, aboute the chyldes necke, is very good: dyuers other thynges there be whyche myghte be here rehersed, but thys shall be suffycient at thys tyme.

mistletoe of the oake

¶ Consumpcyon or pynyng awaye of the body.

¶ When the infant falleth awaye, and the flesshe rebateth, remaynyng nothynge but as it were skynne and bone, and therby the chylde wareth sycklely: then let the infant be often bathed in water, in whyche hath bene soden the head & the fete of a wether, so longe tyll the flesshe parte from the bones of hys owne accorde, and euerye tyme that the chyld cōmeth forth of the batthe,

fyrst let it be wyped and dryed cleane, and then annoynt it wyth this oyntment: take fresshe butter, oyle of violettes, and oyle of rooses, of eche one ounce, of the fatte of fresshe porke, half an ounce, of white wexe ii. drams: melt al these thinges together, and make an oyntment of it, annoyntinge ther wyth the chyldes body.

¶ Item take white waxe, swynes grese, shepes tallow, freshe butter, melt al these thynges together, and strayne theym, makynge of it an oyntmente to annoynte the chylde wythall ones or twyse euery daye: but the chiefe hope of restauration must be in lyghte, restoratife, and pure nourishing meates.

¶ Of lassitude, werynesse, or heauinesse of the chyldes bodye.

¶ Sometymes it chasceth that the chyldes membres of the bodye be so feable, as though it had the palsy, so that with that partes of the body the chyld can not helpe it selfe, nether can it lyfte vp the handes, armes, ne stande on the feete: yf the chylde haue thys disease whylest it sucketh, then let the nourse be comforted and strengthened wyth soch thinges ẏ whych haue vertue to heate & to drye. Also let the nourse

fede

fede onely on rosted or fryed meates, & that
she forbeare from mylke, fysshe, & harde or
salte powdred flesshe: for communelye thys
disease springeth of colde and moyste hu-
mours, belegynge the synues.
¶ Farthermore let not the nourse vse any
watered wyne, or myxed, but mere and in
his owne kynde: & let her bathe the childe
euer before that she geue it sucke, after an-
noyntynge it wyth the oyle of castorium,
or the oyle of costū, & let the chylde drynke
euery day a quantite of thys electuary fo-
lowinge: Take garden mynte, cinamome,
cummyn, drye roses, mastycke, fenugreke,
valeriane, ameos, doronicum, zedoarium,
cloues, sanders, xiloaloes, of eche a dram,
of muske halfe a dram: beate all those to
powdre, and confycte them wyth clarified
and depured honye, makinge thereof an e-
lectuarye, of the whyche euerye daye geue
vnto the chyld ỹ weyght of. ii. d. to drynke
with whyte wyne. Yf the chyld haue thys
dysease in euerye parte of hys bodye, then
take an ounce of waxe, and a dram of eu-
phorbium, the whych euphorbium ye shal
beate in a morter wythe. v. or. vi. drops of
oyle tyll it be perfectely beaten, then tem-
pre theym together ouer the fyre addynge
there vnto so moch oyle as may be sufficī-

ent to make a serecloth, and laye it to the raynes of the backe.

¶ Of trymblyng of the bodye or of certayne mēbres of the body called the palsy.

¶ Yf the chylde happen to be vexed wyth trimbling or shaking of the body or ỳ partes therof, so ỳe feare the palsy of ỳ same part, or that the falling sycknes shuld ensue, then remedy it after this meanes: take the oyle of roses, & the oyle of spikenard, & tēpre them together warmyng it, & therw̄ annoint the backe or raynes and the other shakynge membres: ye may also take any other oyle: ỳ which hath vertue to warme and calefye: as the oyle of bays, and suche other.

Item to bathe the chylde in the decoctiō of rosemarye, sage, tyme, ysope, sauery, alexāder, smallach. & is very soueraigne. Yf you can not cure it by this meanes, thē demaunde farther counsayle of the Physycyons.

¶ Agaynst the strangurye or stone with stoppyng of the vryne.

¶ Strangurye, Dissury, and the difficultie in makyng of water, oftentimes chanseth to chyldren by reason of the stone, or aboun-

abundaunce of grauell, other elles manye tymes of some other vyscous, slymye, and fleumatyke matter, in maner and forme of dregges or ragges, ouerthwartynge and crossynge the passage whereby the vryne shulde passe forth, in soch wyse, that (with out great payne) the chylde can not make hys water: and that yet but in small quantite at once.

¶ Whych of these wayes soeuer it come it shal be very good to bathe the chyld vp to the nauel in the decoction of parytorye of the wall. Mallowes, holioke, lynesede lylye rotes, fenigreke, and sauerye: other els wyth a spunge or double lynnē clothe dypped therin eftsones to fomente the share & nether part of the belly agaynste the bladder.

¶ But in men chyldren chiefly fomente them on the straygnts betwene the fundament & the coddes, the whych place in latin is called Perineum: for ther, in thē lieth the necke of ỹ bladder: after this bathing or fomentacion, dry ye places fomented and whylest they be yet red wyth bathing annoynt theym with the oyle of scorpions to be had at the apothecaries, or elles the oyle called Petroleum.

¶ And yf farther nede shal requyre it, ye

may applye this plaster folowinge to the forsayde places: Take of parsely, & of Alexandre, of eche halfe an handful, of pary tory, malowes, holyoke rootes, of eche an handfull: seeth these herbes togeather in good stale ale, tyl soch time as they be soft then powre oute the ale from theym, and stampe the herbes in a stone morter: addinge ther vnto of the sedes of fenugreke and lyne, of eche halfe an ounce beynge fyrste beaten to subtyle powdre.

¶ Itē of cummyn sede the wayght of. iiii. groates beaten lykewyse to fyne powdre, of the oyle of scorpiōs, petroleum or other aperetyke oyle, one ounce and an halfe: of all these well commixed togeather make a plaster and laye to the places afore sayde.

To speake of any medicines to be administred inwardes, it is but folly, for so moch as it is so harde to cause a chylde to take any thynge wythin forth.

¶ This difficultie in making water may ensue by other meanes, whereof we neade not to speake at thys tyme.

¶ Of google eyes, or loking a squynt.

¶ Yf the chyld haue google eyes, or that it loke a squint, then fyrst set the cradel in soch a place, that the lyght may come directely

rectely and right in the childes face, neyther in the one syde, nether in the other, ne ther aboue the head, lest it turne the syght after the light. Also marke, on which side that the eyes do gogle, and let the lyghte come vnto it on the contrary syde, so to returne the syghte. And in the nyghte season set a candell on the contrarye syde, so that by this meanes the goglynge of the eyes maye be returned to the righte place. And farther it shalbe good to hange clothes of dyuers and freshe colours on the contrary syde, & specially of the colour of light grene, or yelowe, for the chyld shal haue pleasure to behold these straunge colours, and in returninge the eye sight towarde soche thinges, it shall be occasion to rectifye the syght agayne. And thys shall be sufficient for this tyme of the diseases of children, after they be borne, making here an ende of thys thyrde Boke for thys tyme.

¶ The fowerth Boke.

¶ Of soche thynges the whych shal be entreated of in thys fowrth Boke. ¶ Cap. i.

HEre in this fowrth Boke (by ye leaue of god) shal brefely be declared soch thinges which may farther or hinder the conceptiō of man, whych as it may be by dyuers meanes letted and hyndered, so also by many other wayes it may be farthered & amended. Also to knowe by certayne sygnes & tokens whether the womā be cōceaued or no, & whether the conception be male or female, & finally certayne remedies & medicines to farther and help conception: & there after we wyll (accordynge to our promyse in the prologue) set forth certayne bellyfying receptes, and so make an ende of this hole treatyse.

¶ Of conception, & how many wayes it maye be hyndred or letted. ¶ Cap. ii.

THere is nothynge vnder heaue whych so manifestely & playnely doeth declare and shewe the magnificent mightinesse of the omnipotēt lyuing god, as doth the

the perpetual & cõtinual generation & cõ-
ception of lyuing thinges here in earth, by
the which is saued, prozoged, & augmẽted
the kynd of al thinges. And where ẏ thys
almighty lozd & creatoz hath so institute
& ozdeined, that no singuler thing in it self
(here vpõ the earth) shuld continually re-
mayne & abyde, yet hath he geuen frõ the
beginning & instincted soche a power and
vertue vnto these moztall creatures, that
they may engendze and produce other lyke
thinges vnto thẽ self, & vnto their own si-
militude, in the which alway is saued the
sede of posteritie: were not thys prouision
had by almighty god, the nature & kind of
al maner of thinges wold sone perysshe &
come to an end, the which vertue & power
of generatiõ many tymes doeth halte and
misse, by defect & the contrary disposition
in the partes generant.

¶ As ye may euidently see in the sowing
of cozne and al other maner of sede: so that
ther be in al maner of generatiõ thze prin-
cipal partes cõcurrẽt to the same: ẏ sower
the sede sowen, and the receptacle oz place
receauing and contaynynge the seede. Yf
ther be faute in any of these thze, thẽ shall
there neuer be due generation, vnto soche
tyme as the faute be remoued oz amended.

The

¶The earth vnto all sedes is as a mother and nourse contaynynge, clyppynge & embrasynge them in her wombe, feadynge and fosterynge thē as the mother doeth the chyld in her bellye or matrix, vntyll soche tyme as they come vnto the groweth, quātite, & perfection due vnto theyr nature & kynde: but yf this sede cōceaued in the bowelles of the earth do not proue or fructyfye, then be thou sure that eyther there is lette in the sower, in the sede, or els in the earth.

¶The earth may be ouer waterisshe, dankyshe, or ouer hoate and drye, or els ful of stones, grauell, or other rubrysshe, or ful of yll wedes, which may strangle and choke the good cozne in his growynge: also the sede may be putrified, or otherwise viciat and corrupted, and so the lyfe and spyryte of it vanished away and destroyed. The sower may vnordinately strewe and caste the seede on the earth. &c. So that yf ther be let in none of these three partes concurrent to generatiō, or that the lettes be remoued & done away, then doubtlesse wyll ensue multiplication and encreasement of that kynde, of the which the sede cometh, accordyng to the natural enclynation, the which almighty god hath enplanted and

set

let in the kynde of all thynges.

¶ Howe many wayes conception may be letted and how the cauſes may be knowen.

¶ Capit. iii.

EVery thynge then the whyche doth encreaſe in hys kynd muſt firſt be conceaued in the wombe and matrix of the mother, whyche is apte and conuenient for the receate of ſoch ſede. And as I ſayd before as there maye be defecte and lacke in the mother receauing the ſede, ſo may ther be faute and defecte in the ſower, & in thee ſeede it ſelfe alſo.

¶ And in woman there maye be foure generall cauſes, by the which the conception may be impedite & let: ouer moch calidite or heate of the matrix, ouer moch coldnes ouer moche humidite or moyſtneſſe, & ouer moch dryeneſſe. Any of theſe fowre qualitees exceadynge temperancye, may be ſufficient cauſes to lette due conception.

¶ Wherfore the ryght excellent phiſitian Hypocrates in the. v. boke of hys Amphoryſmes ſayth: Al ſoche women the which haue colde and denſe matrices, can not conceaue, nor ſoche as haue moyſte and waterythe

ry the matrices can cõceaue: for the powre of the sede is extynguished in it. Also hauinge dyre matrices, conceaue not, for the sede perisheth for lacke of due nutriment and fode: but that matrix the whych hath all these qualities in temperancy, that is fruytefull: Thys is Hypocrates sayinge: the whych thyng also may be wel perceaued by a kamplyer example of the sowinge of cozne.

¶ For yf it be sowen in ouer cold places, soch as be in the partes of a countrey, called Sithia, and in certayne places of Almayne, or in soche places where is contynual snow or frost, or wher the sunne doth not shyne: in these places the sede or grayn sowē, wyl neuer come to proffe, nor fructyfy, but thzough the vehement coldnesse of the place in the which it is conceaued, the lyfe & quickenes of the grayne is vtterly destroyed and adnihilat.

¶ And farther as concerning ouer moch humiditie: yf ye sowe your grayne in a fen or marysh & watery ground, the sede wyl perysh thzough the ouer moche abundãce of water, which extynguisheth the lyuelynesse & the natural power of the grayne & sede.

¶ Lykewyse yf it be sowen in soch a coun

trie

trye or place where is ouer greate heate, not tempered with water and rayne: or yf the yeare be so drye, ꝙ there came no rayne at al to alay the extreme and feruent heat of the sunne, then shall the sede sowen wyther and drye away, & the power of it bee consumed and burnt.

¶Also yf it be sowē in drye places, where neuer cometh no rayne, or on the sand, and grauely places, in soch a place the grayne can neuer take, ne proue, ne be cōceaued in it to come to any fruyte or profyte.

¶Wherfore yf the matrix be distempered by the excesse of any of these fowre qualities, then must ye reduce it agayne to temperācie by soch remedies, as I shall shew you hereafter. Lykewyse may there be defecte and lacke in the man, as yf the sede be ouer hoate, the which the woman shall feele, as it were burning hoat, or to colde ꝙ whych she shal fele, as it were in maner cold as yse, or to fluye or thinne, &c. diuers other wayes also it may be letted, which shal not nede here to be rehearsed.

Nowe yf the woman can not conceaue, the cause comming of ouer moch frigidite and coldenes in the matrixe, that shal she know by these tokens, she shal feale great cold about the sides, the raynes of ꝙ back

the

& the matrix, her vryne shal appeare whyte and thinnisshe, and sometimes also some what kypsse and thycke, and all maner of cold thinges shal noye her, hoate thinges shall greatly comforte her.

¶But yf it come by ouer moch humidite of the matrix, that shal she know by these sygnes: Yf the body of her be of a fat and grosse dispositiō, yf with her flowres yssue forth at the beginning and the latter ende of them certayne vyscous and watery substaūce, and that her vryne be whyte, thick and sometyme as it were mylcke. Also that she feale great colde and payne about the matrix & pryuie partes, and moch dolour in her sydes and in the raynes of her backe.

¶And when ouer moch heate or dryeth in the matrix, is cause of the hynderaunce of conception, then if the vryne hye coloured, red or yelowe, beynge thinne with certayne motes appearynge in the water, the woman hath greate thyrst, and bytter rysynge or belchyng ryse of the stomacke in to the mouth. And many tymes they that are in thys case, are verye spare & leane in al theyr body, hauing also but smal quantite of flowres, the which thing may happē ether by ouer moch watch or ouer moch

fastinge

fasting, labor, trauel, sorowe, sycknesse. &c. But soch womē which naturally ar thus spare & leane, may very hardly be brought to a temperācye agayne & be made apte to cōceaue. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme to know which qualitie by his excesse causeth sterilite, now wil we shew how it shalbe knowen whether lack of conception be in the woman or els in the man, & howe to know whether the womā be conceaued or no, accordinge to thee mynde of right experte physitions.

¶ How to knowe whether lacke of conception be of the woman or of the man, and howe it maye be perceaued, whether she be conceaued or no. Capit. iiii.

Yf ye be desyrous to know whether the man or the woman be hynderaunce in conception: let eche of them take of wheate & barleye cornes, and of beanes of ech. vii. the which they shal suffre to be steped in theyr seuerall vryne: the space of xxiiii. houres: then take. ii. pottes, soch as they set gylyflowres in: fyl thē wyth good earth: & in the one let be set the wheat, barlye, & beanes, styped in the mans water, & in the other the wheat, barly, and beanes styped in the womans water: and euerye mor-

morninge the space of.viii.or.x. dayes, let eche of thē with theyr proper vryne water the sayd sedes sowē in the foresayd pottes & marke whose pot doth proue, & the sedes therin cōtayned doth grow, in ỹ partye is not the lack of cōception, & se ỹ ther come no other water or rayne on the pottes: but trust not moch this farfet experiment.

¶ Itē according to Hypocrates wrytinge yf ye wil know whether the faut be in the womā or no, then let the womā receaue in to her body vnderneth, beyng wel & closely closed round about the fume of some odoryferous perfume, as laudanū, storax calampte, lignum aloes, muske, ambre, and soch other, & yf the odour & sauour of soch thinges ascende thorow her body vp vnto her nose, ye shal vnderstand, that sterilitie commeth not of the womans part, yf not: then is the defecte in her.

¶ Item yf she take garlycke beyng pilled out of the huskes, & conuaye of it into the priuie partes, & yf the sente of it ascend vp thrōugh the body vnto the nose, the womā is fautlesse: yf not, then is ther lack in her these tokēs, al though they haue a certain reason, & apparence, yet be they not alwayes vnfallyble, but onely lyckelye.

¶ Whether she be cōceaued already or no,

ye

ye shall knowe by these sygnes: Fyrst the flowres yssue not in so great quantyte as they are wonte, but ware lesse and lesse, & in maner nothyng at al cõmeth from thẽ. Also the brestes begyn to ware rounder, harder, and stykkar then they were wont to be, the woman shall longe after certayne thynges otherwyse thẽ she was vsed to do before that tyme. Also her vryne wareth kyndly and thyckyshe, by retensyon of the superfluities. Also ỹ womã fealeth her matrice very fastelye enclosed and shytte, in so moche that as Hypocrates sayeth, the poynte of a nedle may scace enter.

To knowe whether ỹ woman be conceaued or no.

¶ Item to knowe whether she be conceaued or no, accordyng to Hypocrates mind, in the. v. of his Ampho. geue vnto the woman when she is goynge to bedde a quantite of mellicratum to drynke, and yf after that drynke she fele great payne, gnawyng, and tumblynge in her belly, thẽ be ye sure, ỹ she is cõceaued: thys mellicratũ is a drynke made of one part wine another part water soddẽ together, w a quãtite of hony.

But yf ye be desyrous to knowe whether the conception be man or woman, then let a drop of her mylke or twayne be mylked on a smothe glasse: or a bryght knife: other elles on the nayle of one of her fyngers: &

To knowe whether ỹ conception be male or female.

yf the mylke flewe and ſpred abrode vpon it by and by, then is it a woman chyld, but yf the droppe of mylke continue and ſtand ſtyl vpon that, the whych it is mylked on, then is it ſygne of a man chylde.

¶Item yf it be a male: then ſhall the woman wyth chyld be well coloured, & light in goyng, her belly round: bygger toward the right ſyde then the left: (for cõmunely the mã chyld lyeth in ỹ ryght ſyde, the woman in the left ſide) & in time of her baring ſhe ſhall better digeſt and lyke her meate: her ſtomacke nothyng ſo queſy ne feable.

¶Of certayne remedyes and medicines which may farther the woman to conceaue. Capit. b.

All ſterilite then for ỹ moſt part enſueth and cõmeth of the diſtẽperancy of one of theſe. iiii. fore named qualytyes, wherefore the remedye & cure of the ſame whẽ it chaũceth, muſt be done by ſoch thinges, the which haue cõtrary power, & operatiõ to ỹ exceſſiue qualitie, for by that ſhal it be reduced to hys temperancye agayne.

¶As yf that coldeneſſe and moyſteneſſe exceadyng temperancye in the matrixe be occation of ſterilite, then muſte ſhe applye ſoch thinges to that place, the which be of nature

nature hote & drye, the which may califye and warme the place, and also drie vp the yll moystnes and humours contayned in the same, hyndryng conceptyon.

¶ And for because that the most generall & cõmune cause of sterilitie doth procede of cold, waterysshe & fleugmatick humoures which be dewing the innersides & holones of the matrix vp the port & mouth therof also, causeth that the sede sent from the man into the womãs wombe or matrix can not ther remayne ne cleaue: nether is ỹ mouth or porte of the wõbe apt or able to close it selfe suffycyently after the receptiõ of the sede, the fleumye & flymy humours withstãding it: the which vnlesse they be discussed, or dryed away, ỹ sede, alway slippeth & slydeth forth as fast as it entreth in.

Wherefore to remedy and to do awaye the foresayd impedyment, ye shall vse the meanes which foloweth.

Fyrst wythin a day or .ii. after the womans termes be passed, let her by the aduise of some phisiã take a purgatiõ whi che may purge fleume & waterysheuesse. And then the next, or the thyrd daye after, let her syt in a bath vp almost to ỹ nauell. In the whyche bathe ye shall decocte and seeth these herbes folowing: take of baye

leaues, mallowes, red myntes, myrtyls, ramomel, maiorã, marigoldes, of eche an handful, of sage. iii. handfuls, of marcury and brankursyn of eche .ii. handfuls, seeth all these herbes together in fayre water, or (yf it were for a noble woman) in halfe water & the other halfe red wyne, in this bathe let her remayne the space of a good halfe houre: & a lytle before that she come forth out of the bath geue her to drinke of this electuary folowing.

¶ Take of spyke, nutmegges, cloues, galyngale, Cinamome, & lõge pepper of eche the wayght of a groate, of annys sede the wayght of. ii, groates, of sage leues dried the weight of. iii. grotes, al these thinges (eche by them selfes) beatẽ to smal poudre tempre them all together in so moch pure clarified hony as may be sufficiẽt to receaue al the powdre, other els commixe with thys powdre so moche fyne sugre as thee weyghte of the powdre amounteth vnto: wherof ye shal geue vnto her at once thee weyght of. ii. grotes, & .viii. ix. or .x. sponefulles of good white or claret wine, other els with good malueseye, or muscadell.

¶ And al this must be done other fastinge in the morning one houre before brekefast or dynar: Other elles. v. or. vii. houres after

ter dyner: so that it be not done vpon a ful stomacke: but yf ye take the bath and thee Electuariū in the mornīng then at nyght iii. or. iiii. houres after supper let her receaue vnderneth her clothes the vapoure of these thynges folowing into the pryuytie: Take of Lauēdre dried, of vnset tyme, bayberies, puy leaues, of eche half a lyttle handful, of white frankēcense ỹ weyght of iiii. grotes, of sage dried or other. ii. lyttle handfuls, of rosemary leaues. i. handfull: seeth these together in fayre water & whē they be perfectly soden, then let the womā set her self ouer the vapour therof sitting growe ling, other els set on a couer made for the nonce with a tunnel or cōdyte, thorough the which the vapour maye be directed in the womans pryuye passage, the nere thereby, that the vertue therof maye approche vnto the wombe or wōbe porte. Ye may also in ỹ same water, dyp wooll or els fyne lynnē clowtes, & so to cōuay it into the pryuy passage, ther to remayn the space of one or. ii. houres: this bath, electuary, and vapour, I coūsel them that haue nede, to vse thē the space of. iii. dayes continually, & then the thyrde nyght to company with her husband: & by the grace of god she shalbe sped: There be sometymes,

that wyth the vse of the bath only, or the electuary alone, ether the vapour without any farther remedy haue bene aptyfyed to conceptiō: but who that vseth it as is aboue mencioned, worketh the surer waye.

¶ These shall be sufficient remedies, for want of conception, proceadinge of colde, moyst, & flegmaticke humidities. Now yf it come by any distemperancye in heat and dryeth, thē let her be purged of colour or other vnkynd heat bred in the body, by thinges apt & mete for that purpose: & then afterward to vse bathes, electuaries, & vapours of moderately cooling thinges, as of roses, violets, lettuse, purcelayne, plantayne and dyuers other.

¶ But for so moch that most communely the vnaptitude of cōception (in women hauinge their healthy) springeth of the superfluyte of cold & moyst humoures (whereof we haue al ready spokē) therfore all other impedimentes left a part, ye shal holde ye content with this for this tyme, for yf I wolde make mencion of all the occasions, wherby conceptiō may be let or impedite: thē shuld I here alledge & bring in al ỹ diseases ỹ may happē to a womā in ỹ partes with the remedies thereof, whiche were a long worke & not propre for this volume.

¶ In

¶ In this .vi. Chap. is entreated of dyuers belly lyenge receptes as ye may here after reade.

THe embellishing or bellyfying medicines wherof I entend to speake here be not to be vnderstanded, to be of that sort wher by any Adstiticious, or outwarde forayne beautie or set colours should be acquyred or gottē, the which farfet & damnable curiosite, I dout not but that al honest & vertuous sad wemen do vtterly abhorre & cōtempne: but here mine only meaning is to shewe how to remoue certayne blemishes & as it were wedes of the body through the which many tymes the naturall beauty thereof is obscured & defaced: for as in a fayre gardē be it neuer so beautyful, yet yf it be not regarded & loked vnto, the weedes entermingling them selues among the good herbes wil defourme and emperisshe the good grace of theym: for in the earth be it neuer so well dylygented & pyked, yet alwayes therein wyll remayne some sparkes & seedes of vnloked for weedes, the whyche euer when tyme or season serueth nature thrusteth forth.

¶ Lykewyse in the body of mā among the good & necessary humours is some sparke or qualitie of yll, & not necessary humors,

with the which nature being offended, and cloyed, expelleth & dryueth thē forth some tymes into one place & sometimes into an other: accordīg to the aptitude or feblenes in resistence of the place receauing it: & the force or violencye of nature (ther wyth greued,) sendynge it: so that the superfluytees found in the vppar parte and face or superfycye of the skyn, ensueth by the superfluyte and domynyon of lyke matter contayned and commyxed in thee vaynes amonge the bloud, and is a great euydence and testymony therof: But here I wyl not speake all kyndes of vtter dyseases sprygynge of thys inwardes corrupted humours, but onlye of soch thynges as communelye chaunse to men and women with out any emperyshement of theyr healthy.

¶ As for example fyrst I wyll brefly declare the filthines of the head called in latyn Porrigo in englyshe the dandraff of the head: the which is, when that in kembing or cratchynge of the head certayne whyte skales, as it were bran falleth of frō the head and lyeth very thicke amōg & vnder the hayre.

¶ Of the cause and remedyes of dandraffe of the head.

¶ The cause of thys dandraffe commeth by

by aboundaunce of fleumetyke humorꝛs cõ-
myxte wyth the bloud the which daylye &
houreli, by vnsellible ſweatig euapozateth
and yſſueth fozth of the poozes in the ſkin
that couereth the panbone, & as fast as it
yſſueth fozth dryethe on the vtter ſuperfy-
cye of the ſkyn, and there remaynyng and
gatheryng togethꝛ becommeth euery day
moꝛe and moꝛe, thereto greatly helpynge
the fozeſt of hayꝛe which couereth, harbe-
reth, & retayneth ſoch ſuperfluytes moꝛe in
that places thē in any other wher no hayꝛe
groweth. And moſt communely they that
haue blacke hayꝛe, haue moꝛe ſtoꝛe of dan-
dꝛaffe thē other: this humour ſuffred ouer
long to raygne on the head, deſtroyeth and
coꝛrupteth the rotes of the heyꝛes, makig
them to fal of in great plenty, & ſpecially
in kēbing, & al though ỹ this ſuperfluytie
be no clendly, yet noꝛ withſtāding, it ſhall
be no wyſdō foꝛ me to teache, ne any other
herewyth encombꝛed too learne howe too
ſtoppe it, foꝛ feare of farther inconueniēs:
but only I councel you ones in .x. dayes at
the leſt to waſhe & ſkowꝛe the head cleane
with good lye wherin let be ſteped in a lin
nen bagge of annys ſeede, cummyn, dꝛyed
roſemarye fenugreke, and the ryndes of
pomegranate of eache lyke moche: and
beware

beware the after washing of your head ye take no colde before the head be perfectely dryed.

¶ And wher as some saye that they which vse oft washing of theyr heades shalbe very prone to hedache: ẏ is not true, but only in soch ẏ after they haue bene washed, roll vp theyr hayre being yet wet, about theyr heades, the cold wherof, is daũgerous to bring thẽ to Catarrhes, & pooles wyth other incõueniences: wherfore al diligence must be had ẏ the head may be exactly wel dried with warme clothes whilest ẏ head is yet hoate of the washinge: & then neuer feare no incõueniens but rather cõueniẽce & cõmodite: & let this be done also fasting in the morninge, or els .i. houre before supper: or .v. houres after supper: this oft washinge shal purifye the skyn of the head, & stedfast the hayre frõ falling, leuyate and lyghtẽ the head with al the senses therin cõtayned, & greatly comfort the braynes.

¶ To take awaye hayre from places, where it is vnsemelye.

¶ Itẽ sometymes hayre groweth in places vnsemely and out of ordre, as in many maydens & women the hayre groweth so lowe in the forehead & the tẽples, ẏ it disfygureth thẽ: for this ye may vse .iii. wayes to

es to remoue them: ether to plucke vp one after another with pincets, soch as many wemen haue for the nonce: ether els wyth this lye folowing. Take new burnt lyme iiii. ounces, of arsenicke. i. ounce stype both these in a pint of water ỹ space of. ii. dayes and then boyle it frō a pynt to the halfe.

¶ And to proue whether it be perfect, dyp a fether therin, & yf the plume of the fether depart of easely thē is it stronge ynough: with this water then annoynt so farre the place that ye wold haue bare frō hayre as it lyketh you, and within a quarter of an houre pluck at the hayres & they wyl folow: & then washe that place moch w̄ water wherein bran hath bene steped, & that done annoynt the place with the whyte of a new layd egge, & oyle olyke beatē & mixt together with ỹ iuyce of syngrene or purcellayne to alaye the heate engendred of ỹ forsayd lye. The thyrde waye to remoue hayre is with a plaster made of very dry pytche, & vpon lether applyed to the place the hayres being first shauē or cut as nere as can be with a payre of Cysars.

¶ Nowe when the hayres be vp by the rootes, thē to let them that they grow no more take of alome, ỹ weyght of a groate & dissolue it in. ii. sponefulles of the iuyce of

of nightshade or of henbane, & ther withal anoynt the place.ii.or.iii.times euery day the space of.ix.or.x. dayes: and heyre wyll growe no more in that place.

¶ To do away frekens or other spottes in the face.

¶ These frekens & soch other spots in the face or other where in ỹ body: may be take away by ofte annoynting the w̄ thoyle of tartar to be found alwayes at ỹ apotheca ries & surely that oyle is soueraygne for ỹ purpose. Item take Elebor⁹ us & seeth of it an ounce in halfe a pynt of stronge whyte vinegre tyll halfe be cōsumed: then myxte ther w̄ hony.iii.sponefuls, & ỹ weyght of a peny of mercury sublymid, (to be had at the apothecaries) & seeth these together a gayn til it becom thick: w̄ this annoynt ỹ frekyns & it wyl destroy them: this is also verye good for thee morpheu, and other discoloration or stayninge of the skyn.

¶ To destroye warts and soche lyke excrescēsis on the face or els where.

¶ For this purpose nothing is so excellēt as euery daye once, the space of.iii.or.iiii. dayes to drop one droppe of strong water called aquafortis on thē, for this destroyeth them in very shorte tyme. Item ỹ iuyce of a red onyon, & the iuyce of marigoldes

is

is very good for the same. Item dissolue a lytle Marcury sublimid, in fayre water & there with drop the warts, and they wyl sone wyther and consume awaye.

¶ To cleare and clarifye the skyn in the handes, face or other parte of the bodye.

¶ For this is nothing better then to take one sponefull of the oyle of tartar and. vi. sponefuls of water, with these cõmixed to gether wash the hãdes, face & other parts: for it skowreth, clenseth, & purifyeth the skyn souerayngly, & wyl suffre no fylthynes to remayne in the poores of the flesshe: & this oile of tartar is made on this wise Take wyne lyes dryed, the which ỹ gold smythes do call Arguyl, and beate it into powdre, & then fyll therof a goldsmythes crucyble & set it amõg hoate coles tyl the arguyll begin to ware blacke, thẽ take it out of the fyre & let it coole, & bynd it in a lynnẽ clout, & hange it a lytle ouer the vapour of hoate boylinge water: that done, hang this clout with ỹ arguyl in a glasse with a broade mouthe, so that the bag or clout touche not the bottome of the glasse and the water or oyle called of tartar wil drop downe a lytle & lytle: & the sooner, yf that it stand in a very cold and moyste sellar. Item to skowre the hãdes & the body

some

some vse to washe their handes wyth the powdre of orres, whych is the roote of the blue flowre deluce: & some with beanflowre. Item the yolke & whyte of egges is good for that purpose, And so is hony.

¶ To couple, and moysture, the ruggednes of the skynne.

¶ Annoynt the skyn with thoyle of swete almons, thee same is verye good also for chippiges of the lippes or hādes. Itē dere suet is very proure for thee same purpose, especially beynge wel washed & tempered wyth rosewater wherin hath bē dissolued two or thre graynes of pure muske.

¶ Agaynst sodayn rysinges of pymples through burnynde heate in the face or els where.

Take the white of an egge & beat it wel with a spone, & then therwith commixe. ii sponefuls of salet oyle, one sponeful of rosewater another of the iuyce of sorell, and half a lytle sponeful of vinegre: herewyth annoynt the pimples and rysynges.

¶ To kepe and preserue the teeth cleane.

¶ Fyrst yf they be very yelow and fylthy or blackishe, let a barbar skowre, rubbe, & pyke them cleane, and whyte: thē after, to mayntayne thē cleane, it shalbe very good to rubbe them euery day with the roote of a mallowe, & to pyke them cleane, that no meate

meate remayn, & putrify betwene the teth. Item take of the ſmal white pebel ſtones whych be found by the water ſides, & bete them in very ſmal powder, hereof take an ounce, & of maſtycke one dram: myngle them togeather, & with thys powder ones in. xiiii. daies rub exactli your teth, & this ſhall kepe your teeth fayre & whyte, but beware ye touch not: ne vexe the gummes therewyth al. Item to ſtable & ſtedfaſt the teeth & to kepe the gummes in good caſe, it ſhalbe verye good euery day in the mor-ning to waſhe wel the mouth w̄ red wyne.

¶ Of ſtynckyng breath,

¶ Stinch of the breth cometh ether by oc-caſiō bred in ỹ mouth or els in ỹ ſtomack, yf it come frō the ſtomack, thē ỹ body muſt be purged by the farther aduyſe of a phy-ſytion, yf it be engendred in the mouth one ly, then moſt cōmunelye it cōmeth of ſome rotten & corrupted holow teeth, which in this caſe muſt be plucked out, & the gūmes wel ſtowred and waſhed w̄ vineger wher in hath ben ſodē cloues & nutmegges: the clenely kepyng of the teeth doth conferre moch to the ſauerynes of the mouth.

¶ Of the ranke ſauour of the armeholes.

¶ This vyce in many perſons is very te-dious

diouſ & lothſome: the remedy wherof is to purge fyrſt the colerycke & egre humours originall cauſers of the ſame: and afterwarde to waſſhe the armeholes oftentymes wyth the water wherein wormewod hath ben ſoden together with camomell & a litle quantite of alum. Item auctors do wryte that ỹ rootes of artichauts (ỹ pithe pyked oute) ſoden in whyte wyne and ſo dronke, doth clenſe the ſtenche of the armeholes and other partes of the body by the vryne: for (as Galien alſo doeth teſtifye) he prouoketh copy and plenty of ſtinkynge and vnſauery vryne, from al partes of the body, the whych proper tye it hath by ſpecyall gyft and not only by his hote qualyte. And thus here I make an ende of thys fourth and laſt boke.

FINIS.

Imprinted at London by
Tho. Ray.

1552

and is in the yeare 1695
120 odd yeares old

University Library
Cambridge
(No 1101 was here)
Presented by
Mrs C Darwin.
Cambridge
1894

The Byrth of mankynd, otherwyse named the womans Boke.

Newly set forth, corrected and augmented, whose ꝯtentes ye may reade in thee Table of the Boke, and more playnely in the Prologue.

By Thomas Raynald Phisition.

Anno. M.D.L.ii.

Quamuis potuit Aristarchus quispiam curam nonnullam, diligentiamq; in hoc opere desiderare: nullus tamē tam iniquus erit, qui inficias iuerit opere pretium hic aliquod factum esse: quum & multo locupletius, auctius, emendatiusq; quam vel Latine, vel Anglice, prius habebatur, iam prodeat. Et nisi plurimis, hisq; necessariis curis familiaribus distracti (Interimdum excudebatur) fuissemus, alius plane, factus fuerat hic liber. Haud ignari, non pauca hic congeri parum admodum necessaria, que omitti potuissent adeoq; vilo lectoris dispendio. Rursum alia desiderari que adscita, non leuiter profuissent ad presens negotium, decreuimus igitur hæc opusculum hoc sub incudem reuocare, & exactiore lima, omnia (pro viribus nostris) nitidius expolire: Interim precantes vt non minore successu ab obstetricibus, reliquas q; matronis omnibus amplectatur, quam est affectu scriptum.

Here begynneth the Table of thys present Boke.

Fyrste, a Prologue to the women readers.

¶In this fyrste Chap. is brefely declared the contentes of the first boke. Capit. i.

¶In how many Coates the body is lapped or inuolued. Capit. ii Foli. i

¶Here is declared what the muskles be. Capit. iii folio. iiii

Of the kell called peritoneū. Ca. iiii. fo. vi

¶The declaratiō of the names and nature of the Matrix. Capit. v fo. viii

Of the wōbe & hys partes. Ca. vi fol. ix

¶Of the Mother porte. Cap. vii foli. xi

¶Of the vessels of sede called ỹ stones with other therto appertayning. Ca. viii fo. xiii

¶Of the sede bringers. Capit. ix eodem

¶Of thee office and vse of these seede bryngers. Capit. x foli. xvii

¶Of the waye by the which the sede is sent from the stones to the aungels or corners of the matrix. Cap. xi foli. xxii

¶ Here is declared the ſytuation of the bladder in woman. Capit. xii. foli. xxv

¶ Of the vaynes which reſort to the matrix and the partes thereof. Item of the termes and theyr courſe wyth the cauſes thereof. Capit. xiii. foli. xxviii

¶ Of the. iii. cauſes or wrappers wherein ỹ infant is lapped. Capit. xiiii. fol. xxxiii

¶ Which of the thre matrix vaynes cõtayne the termes: & howe the milke cometh to the womans brestes. Capit. xv. foli. xli

¶ The declaration by letters of the fygures folowing, wherin be ſet forth to ỹ eye euery part in womã mẽcioned in this boke before.

¶ Of the fyrſt fygure. folt. l.

¶ Of the ſecond fygure. eodem

¶ Of the thyrd fygure. foli. li

¶ The fowrth fygure. fol. lii

¶ The fyfth fygure fo. liiii

¶ The ſyxte fygure. eodem

¶ The ſeuenth fygure. fol. lv.

¶ Of the. viii. ix. x. and. xi. fygure. eodem.

¶ The Table of the ſecond Boke.

Of the tyme of byrth, and which is called natural or vnnaturall. Cap. i. folt. lvi

Of eaſy and vneaſy, difficul, or dolorous delyueraunce, and the cauſes of it: wyth the ſignes howe to knowe and foreſee the ſame. Capit. ii. folio. lviii

Howe

How a womā with child ſhal vſe her ſelf, and what remedyes be for theym that haue hard labour. Capit.iii. foli.lxiii.

Remedyes & medycynes by the whych the labor may be made more tollerable, eaſye, & without great payne. Capit.v fol.lxxvi

How the ſecondyne or ſeconde byrth ſhalbe forſed to yſſue forth, yf it come not freelye of hys owne kynde. Capit.v. fol.lxxix

How many thinges chaunce to the women after their labour, & how to auoyde, defend, or to remedy the ſame. Capi.vi. fo.lxxxiiii

Of aborcementes or vntymely byrthes, & the cauſes of it, & by what remedies it maye be defended, holpē & eaſed. Ca.vii. fo.xciiii

Of dead byrthes, & by what ſygnes or tokens it may be knowen, by what meanes it may alſo be expelled. Cap.ix. fol.C iii

In the laſt chap. of this boke, be briefly recyted certayne experte medycynes whiche be moſt requiſite to ỹ chief purpoſe entended in this preſent boke. Cap.x. fol.C x

The thyrde Boke.

In this fyrſt chap. of this thirde Boke is fyrſt declared the matters therein cōtayned, & then how the infante newly borne, muſt be handled norſhed, and loked to. Capit.i. folio.C xiii

Of the nourſe, & her mylke: and how long

the chyld ſhould ſucke. Cap. ii fol. C xv
Of dyuerſe dyſeaſes & infirmities whych chaunce to chyldren lately borne: & the remedies therfore. Capit. iii. fol. C xix
Of thee ſyre or ouermoche looſenes of the bellye. eodem
To vnloſe the chyld being bound. fo. C xx
Remedye for the cough and diſtillation or catarrhes of the head. fo. C xxi
Remedye for ſhorte wynde fo. C xxiii
Agaynſte wheales or bladders on the tongue. eodem
Of exulceration or clefture, chappinge or chyninge of the mouth. foli. C xxiiii
Of apoſtumation & runnynge of the eares Folio. eodem
Of apoſtumation in the head fol. C xxv.
Of the ſwellynge or bolnynge of the eyes. Folio. eodem
Of the ſcumme or whyte of the eye eodem
Agaynſt immoderate heate of the feuer. Folio. eodem
Agaynſt frettynge or knawyng in the bellye. foli. C xxvi
Agaynſt ſwellyng of the body eodem
Agaynſt often ſneeſynge eodem
Of whelkes in ỹ body & the cure. fo. C xxvii.
Agaynſt ſwelling of the coddes. eodem
Agaynſt ſwelling of the nauell. fo. C xxviii

Agaynſt

Agaynst vnlepynesse eodem
Agaynst yexinge of the hyckate eodem
Agaynst often parbzakinge by weakenesse & feblenesse of the stomacke fol.C xxix
Agaynst fearefull and terrible dzeames. folio.C xxx.
Agaynst yssuynge fozthe of the fundamente gutte. folio.C xxxi
Agaynst Tenasmus. eodem
Agaynst wozmes in the belly. eodem
Of chauking oz gaulling in any place of the bodye. folio.C xxxiii
Of the fallyng syckenesse eodem
Consumption oz pyning away of the bodye. Folio.C xxxiiii
Of lassytude, wearynes, oz heauynes of the chyldes body. eodem
Of trembling of the body oz of certayn membzes of the body, called the palsye. fo.C xxxv
Agaynst the stragury oz stone with stopping of the vzyne. eodem.
Of gogle eyes oz loking a squint. fo.C xxxvi

The fowrth Boke.

Of soche thynges the which shall be entreated of in this.iiii.boke.Ca.i. eodem
Of conception, & how many wayes it maye be hindzed oz letted.Capit.ii eodem
How many wayes conception may be letted and how the causes may be knowen. Capit.iii. Fol.C xxxix

eth & ſpreadeth it ſelfe into thee lappes ſydes, or extreame ende of theyr pryme paſſage: & alſo in the ſaid perineum: And thus ſhall ſuffyce for the declaratiō of the vaynes which reſort to matrix & her partes: ſaue that ye muſt vnderſtande, that loke what order or proceſſiō of vaines cometh to the Matrix from the ryght ſyde: the ſame ſelfe order is likewiſe in the lefte ſyde. And agayne, that none of theſe vaynes runne to thee matrix or other where, vnaſſociate of an Artyre.

What is meant by thys worde Termes.

¶ Now to come to the declaration of the nature of termes, ye ſhall vnderſtande that they be called in Latyn Menſtrua, ſo: becauſe that ones in a moneth they happen alwayes too womankind, after .xiiii. or .xv. yeres of age paſſed (being in theyr perfect health): In Engliſhe they be named termes, becauſe they retourne

eftſoones

eſtloones at certayn ſeaſons, times and termes: & ſome name thē theyr flowers: what name ſoeuer ye gene vnto it ye ſhal wyte, that the thing meant therby is nothynge elles but the iſſuynge of certayne bloud comprehended in the baynes of the matrix, there by lyttle and lyttle, collected and gathered betwene terme & terme, and ſo agayne at wonte & actoſtumed tymes by nature expelled and ſent forth.

¶ The which bloud, the matrix baynes do attract frō the great Vena cana into thys part: & that not ſodenly or at once, but very ſobrelye and wyth moch leaſure, yea, ſo moche as ther is ſpace betwene, the one hauing of the flowes and the other (whych is communely thre weekes more or leſſe accordynge to the womans wonte) ſo longe be theſe ſayd baynes in fyllynge and yf they were ſooner full,

ſoner alſo wolde they ſende it forth agayne: For when they be once repleniſhed they can not conueniently or naturally contayne or drawe anye more, tyll they be lyghted and diſcharged of that that is drawen already.

¶Wherfore at the foreſayd certaine circuites & termes the ſinal endes of theſe matrix vaines, open thē ſelfes in the innerfate or ſuperfycye of the matrix, after an inſenſyble & ſecrete pryuy ſort, & ſo let to paſſe forth this bloud: which as I haue ſayd is called the womans termes.

The cauſe of the ordonaunce of termes.

¶The cauſe and reaſon why Nature created thys perpetuall courſe of termes in women is thys: for ſo moch as almighty God had ſo inſtitute that womē ſhuld be the veſſels, wherin the ſede of mankynd ſhulde be conceaued, effourmed, or faſhioned, augmēted, nouriſhed, & broughte to perfectiō.

perfection: Thys coulde not be done vnlesse there were a commodious, & conuenient place, to this office assigned and destinate wherefore nature created thee wombe or Matrix to be the sayd receptacle, & house of offyce wherin she moughte at her leasure worke her deuyne feates aboute the sede once conceaued.

¶ Agayne it is not ynough the sede to be placed, vnlesse also it haue fode and nourishmente, to the encrease & augmentaciō of the same: wherfore prudēt lady, nature full wysely hath prouyded that ther should alwayes be prest & readye a continuall course and resorte of bloude in the baynes of thee Matrix, as a verye naturall course, spryuge, fountayne, or wel, euermore readye to arrouse, water, & nourish the feature so sone as it shal be conceaued: yea although the womā do neuer conceaue, other because she

she accõpanieth not wyth mã, other els for some other infirmitie: yet is there no faute in nature, who hathe prepared place: & foode to be at al tymes in readynes.

¶ which fode although it is ordayned for thys necessarye purpose, yet when the purpose faileth (as it doth whẽ there is no feature in the wõbe to be fed therwith) it should be to the place but a burthen, & vnprofytable loade, there too remayne or lynger: wherefore thẽ I say at her set & prescript time she laboreth to cleare her self of it & to expel it as superfluous and seruinge to no vse. The whych thing whẽ she hath so done, yet vnto the said vaynes of this cõtinuall sprig, resorteth of new agayn other freshe blond in the place of that, is departed: which by lyttle & lyttle coling into thẽ, in the wont circuite of tyme refylleth theym, & then yet ys-

sueth

sueth agayne: and so this continual course doeth kepe alwayes in wemẽ frõ theyr youth tyll they come to about fyfty yeares of age a litle more or lesse, at what time naturally this syring dryeth awaye: whych whẽ it is gone, it is impossible for thee woman to beare anye mo chyldren: for were the womã neuer so yonge and lusty, yet if she neuer had her termes (as some soch ther be) she shal neuer also haue no childzen: al beit, it may be that she maye conceaue: but thee sede cõceaued can not prosper but melteth & issueth forth againe for lacke of nutriment.

They that haue no termes cannot bare chyldren.

¶ Item ye shall note that where as some wryte and say that the womens termes folow the course of the mone, so that in ỳ full or in the wane of ỳ mone they should alwayes come: thys is not trewe, for they haue thẽ at one tyme and other in al seasons of

Termes come not to al women like

of the mone: Agayne as they come not to al wemen after one sorte or at one season, so is thee tyme of theyr durance not all one in euery woman for in some they lynger vpō them, v vi. vii. yea. viii. dayes at eche terme to their great effeoblishmēt & strōge paines in the backe: In some other commonlye they passe not the space of. iii. dayes at the vttermost where fore, soch sustayne litle or no paynes at that tyme.

¶ To be shorte all wemen (for the mooste parte) whyche be of very delycate & moyst complections (as the sanguyne chiefly be) haue greatest aboundaunce of termes, and longer tyme doeth it endure vppon theym: And contrarye soche as be drye and collerycke, other by nature or labor, and trauel, and soch that be of complection colde, haue least store of termes, and lesse tyme doo they indure vpon

vpon theym: after what maner the feature conceaued is fed and nouriſſhed with thys bloude (matter at other tymes of the termes) I wyl declare when that I haue ſome what fyrſte ſhewed the nature of certayne caules wherein thee feature conceaued is wrapped and inuolued.

¶Of the thre caules or wrappers wherein the infant is lapped. ¶Capit. xliii.

The ſede conceaued into the wõbe or matrix of the mother, anon it is amplected, clypped, and embraſed of thee inner face of thee matrix thee mouth or porte thereof in the meane whyle cloſed and ſhutte exquiſitely. The ſeede then when it hath bene a certayne lyttle ſpace in the wombe, by the naturall heate, or rather by thee inſette and ingenyte vertue of that

The feature conceaued is wrapped in three caules,

that place, is enuironned & enclosed round with three dyuers coates, caules, or wrappers, whyche in latyne they call (Inuolucra.)

The fyrſte caule.

¶ The fyrſte and mooſte immediate or neareſte to thee bodye of thee conception, is a verye thynne and cleare caule or ſkynne, whyche contayneth rounde aboute, thee whole feature: & yet is faſtened, to no part of the feature, but only at the nauel, by certayne vaynes and Artyres, whereof we wyll ſpeake anon: thys caule in Greke is called Amnios, in Latyn Agnina: for cauſe it is and dylycate as lambes be: The midwifes commonlye call it thee coyfe or byggyn of thee chylde, and ſome call it the chyldes ſherte: the whyche alſo many tymes proceadeth alone with the chylde, ether vppon the chyldes head, or one of the armes or legges. And then the women reſerue it as a thyng

thynge that ſhoulde betoken ſome greate lucke to thee chylde in tyme to come: for they beleue that euerye chylde hath not ſoche a coyfe, becauſe it doth appeare but ſeldom alone, vnaccompanied wyth the other caules: betwene thys wapper or coyfe, and the body of the infante is collected & gathered the yelowiſhe ſweat whych euaporeth continually from the ſkyn of the infant, whyleſte it is in the wombe.

¶ The ſeconde wapper or caule in greke is called Allantoides, in latin Farciminoſa, in englyſhe theſe two termes doo ſygnifye (haggiſwyſe) for becauſe that it is faſhioned moch after the ſhape of the outwarde ſkyn or bagge of an haggiſſe puddinge. The inner face & ſuperficye of thys caule is ſmoth, and moyſte, faſtened to no parte of the fyrſt wapper, but onely at the nauel of the chylde: and contay

the ſecond wapper.

contayneth also rounde aboute. In his cōpasse & cauite or holonesse the hole chyld & the sayd fyrst caule.

Where the vryne of the chylde becommeth

¶ Betwene thys and the fyrst caule is gathered togeather all the store of vryne that the chyld maketh duringe the tyme it is in the mothers wombe, wherein the industry of nature is to be lauded which so prouydeth that thys pysse or vryne of the infante shoulde be expelled betwene these twoo caules, and not remayne about the body therof, lest wyth the acrimony, & egre sharpenes hereof, it shuld endamage & greue the tender body of the baby.

The thyrde wrapper named Chorion.

¶ The thyrde wrapper of the feature is named Chorion of the Grekes, in Latyn Secunde or secundina: in englyshe ye may cal it the secundine Al beit that in the second boke folowing, I do commenlye vse to name the hole after byrth thee secondine.

And

And no doubt but that the auncientes which gaue the name of (secunde or secūdina) to this wapper, gaue the name of the hole to ỳ parte, for thys terme (secunde or secundina) is proper and most due to the after byrth: the whych afterbyrthe, is nothinge els but an yssuing forth, & proceding of these .iii. wappers or caules, together with soch grosse extrements as haue ben engendred and remaynynge in the wombe during the tyme of conception: and that immedyatly after the chyld is fyrst proceded and come to lyghte: for fyrste yssueth the infant, and thē secondly, the fore sayd afterbyrth: & therefore it maye be justely called the seconde byrth or secondyne.

¶ Thys wapper or caule then doth not vniuersally, and in euery parte, compasse, and couer thee infante as the other .ii. wappers do: but onely

the myddle region, as it were from the vpper part of the waſt to the ſhare of the infante: ſo that it is cõpaſſed wyth thys wrapper, as wythe a broade hoope ringe: thee latitude or bredth whereof is commonlye to be eſtemed about the breadthe of. vi. or viii. fyngers: & ſo gyrdeth the chyld round about the body thereof, as it were a broade gyrthe or ſwadlynge band: but yet ye muſt not vnderſtãd that it ſhoulde touche immediatlye the bodye of the infant: for betwene thys and the body thereof (as I haue declared before) be thee forſayde two other caules or wrappers, wythe the generally incloſeth roũde thee hole corps of the infante: where as this hoope caule, compaſſeth & coureth but the myddle region thereof onelye.

The office of the hoope caule.

¶ The office and propertie of thys wrapper is ſoche, fyrſte thee vtter

face

face of it cleaueth and is affyxed or basted very exactly to the inner face and walles of the matrix by meenes of vnnumerable small baynes & artyres whych at thys tyme do shewe them selfes more clearely in the face of the matrix thē at any other tyme the which also cleue vnto this hope caule in euerye parte thereof touchinge the same matrix: so that the sayde hoope caule, and thee innerfyde of the Matrix be basted, verye thicke togeather by the immediate meanes of the sayd baynes & braunches euen moch lyke as the body of the yuye tree basteth, & fasteneth it self vnto the walls or trees wherby it creapeth by many herye fibres or small thredes.

¶Thys coniunction betwene the matrix & the hoope caule reachethe vniuersally so far & so broad as the latitude and longitude of the hoope